Thetford Court Residents Manual



Contents – Thetford Court

		Page no.
1)	Welcome to Thetford Court	3
2)	Notting Hill Genesis PMO Details Other Useful NHG Contacts Lease/ Tenancy Details Building Warranty & Insurances Build-Zone NHG App Resident Association Forum	4
3)	Estate Management Post & Deliveries Parking Cycle Storage Security/Access Lifts Refuse Disposal Communal Areas Service Charge Estate Regulations Amenities	7
4)	Defects Length of Defect Liability Period Defect Response Times Defect Categories End of the Defects Liability Period	12
5)	Repairs How to raise a Repair? Landlord Responsibility Tenant Responsibility Repair Priority Levels Emergency Repair Service	14
6)	Utilities Mains Water/Drainage Electricity Heating & Hot Water Energy & Water Efficiency Television Internet Radiators Underfloor Heating Operating Instruction Mechanical Ventilation Thermostats	16
7)	Looking after your new home Finishes Appliances Windows, Door & Internal Security	32

Contents Insurance Local Area Information Appendices

Welcome to Thetford Court

In this home user guide you will find useful information to help you get settled in. The purpose of this guide is to help you to familiarise yourself with your home and Thetford Court. It is important that you review the contents of this manual to ensure that the features installed within your home are utilised fully.



The scheme has transformed the former Elizabeth Arden factory site into a new purpose-built development- delivering 374 new homes including 60 brand new shared ownership properties, 1403 sqm of commercial space spread across three multi-storeyed residential towers, as well as public realm improvements.

The Perfume Factory development (which Thetford Court is apart of) is located at the heart of North Acton and undergoing rapid transformation. The site is less than a mile from the Old Oak Common regeneration area and is witnessing some significant transport connectivity improvements.

Your Residential Block is called Thetford Court.

Notting Hill Genesis

Notting Hill Genesis was formed in April 2018 when Notting Hill Housing Trust and Genesis Housing Association merged. Both companies' roots reach back to the 1960s when our legacy organisations were established by local people who shared a similar vision to provide the communities of West London with a home from which to build themselves and their families a safe and secure future.

Our staff are motivated to provide a caring, compassionate, personal, and localised service. All of us, from board to those supporting residents, spend time in our communities, working with and listening to residents, elected representatives and other colleagues. We are pragmatic about the need for commercial effectiveness, but always balance that with providing compassionate, resident-focused services and creating and maintaining diverse communities.

Contact your Project Management Officer (PMO):

PMO Name: Cherish Or E-mail: <u>cherish.or@nhg.org.uk</u> Tel: +442038150236

The resident first point of contact is your local office via the number above. If the local office is not able to answer the phone the resident will be given an option to transfer the call to the customer call centre. The resident can also use NHG's self-service portal to raise repairs or for a contact request.

Emergency Line:

For emergency defects that occur outside of normal office hours (evenings, weekends, and public holidays) please call **033 3000 3000**.

Lease details

The lease will be provided as part of the purchasing process.

Building Warranty

Your home has the benefit of cover under the Build-Zone warranty scheme. This is a warranty under the developer, during the first year, and the Build-Zone until 10 years following Practical Completion of the property. The developer has defined responsibilities about defects in materials and workmanship in your new home.

Please note the defect period begins from the date the development was practically completed and handed over to Notting Hill Genesis. Any defects occurring during the first year should be reported via Workwise or to your PMO who will liaise with our in-house specialist defect management team who will then pass the defect on to the developer who is responsible for resolving any issues in line with Build-Zone policy. The defect team will monitor and follow up the defect until it has been resolved.

Following this period, Build-Zone will provide cover for latent defects for the lifetime of the warranty policy, in accordance with the policy terms. If you feel that the defect in your home is a latent defect, please contact Build-Zone on the number information below.

Build Zone Advice Centre

Tel: 0345 230 9873 **Web:** www.build-zone.com

NHG APP- Workwise

We advise downloading NHG's app, as this is where you can find useful information regarding your lease, rent details, property details. You can raise your own home repairs, pay your rent, and seek any extra support that you may need to manage your tenancy.

Installing workwise: Access the NHG website https://www.nhhg.org.uk/residents/my-account/



6

Estate Management

Post and Deliveries

The post boxes for apartments are in the entrance lobby of your apartment block. Please note there is no letter box provided to the property front door or communal entrance door.



Royal mail postal service delivers once a day, Monday to Saturday excluding Sundays and Bank Holidays.

Postal packages and courier deliveries will need to be collected in person in the lobby, please note there is no access to the UNCLE concierge facility.

Parking

Please note there are no car park facilities available for Notting Hill Genesis residents on the premises. Residents will need to obtain a parking from Ealing Council.

Car Club

There will be up to 2 car club vehicles available in Artisan Point ground floor car park. Please register through the car club provider to access this facility which will be available from September 2024.

Cycle storage

Cycle racks have been provided across the development. Please speak to your PMO if you require access to the cycle store. The cycle store can be accessed using the same fob that allows access to the hallway of your apartment block. You can only access the cycle store of your apartment block and if you wish to store a bicycle, please refer the location map below:



Security/ Access

Thetford Court has onsite security, and our CCTV covers the external and internal areas for your safety.

For any security matters please contact your PMO.

Fob access at the External doors, bin store, cycle store doors, lifts, and stair this is provided as an extra security measure for our residents.

Window cleaning

The windows in your apartment are tilt and turn type of windows. It is your responsibility to maintain the windows. Below are some useful tips for cleaning the windows in your apartment:

- The windows exposed to the exteriors may require a frequent cleaning regime.
- To clean the windows, use warm water and mild detergents, avoid harsh solvents as they may damage the finish.
- Avoid using glass cleaners that have an ammonia or alcohol base.
- No matter how stubborn certain stuck-on materials may be, never use a razor or any other kind of blade to scrape them off. This can cause permanent scratches and leave your windows more vulnerable to breaking in the future.
- Clean all the other parts of the window to maintain them.

Lifts

There are 2 lifts installed in your apartment block. If a lift goes out of service, please report to the PMO. An emergency is only considered when someone is trapped inside the lift, please note a lift being out of service is not considered as an emergency.

In the event of a fire, do not use the lifts. When the fire alarm is activated, the lift will automatically return to the ground floor.

Refuse disposal

All residents must dispose any household waste in their designated bin store.

The refuse store for each apartment is located at ground level in your apartment block. Please refer the location map below to locate your bin store:



These stores will require a fob key to access. The general household waste (black wheelie bins) and recycling (green wheelie bin) are removed weekly. The bins must be ready by 5 am and will be collected latest by 10 pm.

For further information including collection dates please visit the London borough of Ealing website:

www.ealing.gov.uk/info/201167/rubbish_and_recycling

When recycling, please ensure you follow the guidelines below:

- Cardboard please flatten or tear into smaller pieces card sleeves, cereal boxes, egg boxes, cards, etc
- Mixed paper
- Plastic bottles empty, rinsed and squashed
- Tins and cans empty and rinsed

Do not put black sacks into the recycling bin as these cannot be recycled.

For bulk recycling of items, please refer the website link below:

Bulky items collection | Bulky items collection | Ealing Council

Estate regulations

If the street lighting is out or there are any pavement issues, please contact the relevant department within Ealing Council or visit <u>www.ealing.gov.uk/site</u>

Please also report to your PMO.

Service charge

Please speak to your PMO.

Communal & Landscape Area



There are communal and landscaped areas at Thetford Court for resident's enjoyment. Please note these areas are for all residents to share and therefore the following rules must be adhered to:

- Do not leave children unattended
- Do not play ball games
- Do not loiter
- Do not use a barbecue or host parties
- Please take all rubbish with you
- The estate is pet friendly subject to seeking permission from the Landlord, please request the Pet Policy form from your PMO.

Defects

Defect liability period

Your home is covered under a 12-month defects warranty, known as the defect's liability period. This period started when Notting Hill Genesis took possession of your home from the contractor. This is known as the practical completion date and will be on your Build-Zone certificate. The contractor is responsible for the rectification of defects and faults that occur during this defect liability period. All defects/ repair issues should be reported via self-service on Workwise or directly to your PMO, once this is reported it will be forwarded to NHG's in house Defects Management Team who will liaise with you and the contractor. The contactor will contact you to arrange a time to visit your home and rectify the problem. The response time will vary depending on the urgency of the problem. Defect categories and responses are detailed below.

Defects categories

Emergency – 24 hours

- Electrical works presenting an immediate risk to health and safety or likely to cause imminent damage to property
- Total failure of electrical lighting or power
- Burst water pipes or other ingress of water that are causing damage to property
- No water supply to a property
- Failure of front entrance doors
- Failure of lifts (where all residential lifts are affected)
- Loss of heating and hot water supply (Vulnerable residents)
- Defects that may cause injury or danger to any person f not immediately attended to.

Please call **033 3000 3000** for emergency defects that occur outside of normal office hours (evenings, weekends, and public holidays)

Urgent - 7 days

- Minor plumbing repairs
- Loss of heating and hot water supply
- Loose or detached banister or handrail
- Windows not closing properly
- Minor electrical repairs

Routine – 28 days

- Repairs to leaking gutters and rainwater pipes
- Minor carpentry repairs to windows or doors (where there are no security risks)
- Non-urgent plumbing repairs
- Repairs to flooring
- Redecoration after other repairs carried out e.g., a leak.

At the end of defects liability period a final joint inspection will be carried out in your home and the communal areas. The inspection party consists of the main contractor's customer service team. The purpose of the end of defects inspection is to check for any outstanding defects which need to be put right by the building contractor.

It is important that access is gained to all homes and the external and internal communal areas. This is the last opportunity to report defects for repair by the building contractor.

If defects are found in the property following the inspection, the building contractor will arrange appointments directly with you to carry out final defect rectification works. You will be required to give access at this appointment time.

After the end of the defect's liability period, general defects inside the home are the responsibility of the homeowner or Notting Hill Genesis. Communal areas will be the responsibility of Notting Hill Genesis or managing agents.

If a repair arises out of misuse of or damage to the property, then the cost of the repair will be borne by the resident.

Defect response times

The Defect Team will take a decision as to whether the fault is a repair, a defect, or your responsibility. Please make sure that the information you provide to the PMO is detailed and correct. Incorrect information which results in a non-defect visit by the contractor your home could result in an abortive call out charge, charged to you.

Repairs

Repairs are reported via workwise and or directly to your PMO.

We are responsible for repairs to:

- The structure of your home including the roof, outside walls, doors, windows, and windowsills.
- ✓ Gutters, down pipes, and drains.
- ✓ Garden walls, fences, and steps used to access and exit the property (except where they are the neighbouring property's responsibility).
- Existing central heating, water heaters and fires (where provided by us).
- Electrical repairs (not including electrical appliances)
- Repairs to the gas installations such as boiler and pipework (not including appliances)
- ✓ Inside walls, floors, and ceilings.
- Doors, door frames, door hinges, letter boxes and skirting boards, window catches, sash cords and window frames.
- Chimney stacks and flues.
- ✓ Banisters.
- ✓ Kitchen units, wall tiling, air vents and extractor fans.
- ✓ Showers (where provided by us), sinks, toilets, and baths.
- ✓ Pest control in communal areas.
- ✓ Bathroom flooring and wall tiles.
- ✓ Persistent issues with drainage/removal of wastewater.

We are not responsible for repairs to:

- Repairs to gas installations such as cookers or gas fires should be carried out by a certified Gas Safe engineer.
- Garden sheds
- Door handles
- Sink/toilet blockages in the first instance. The resident should attempt to unblock these with drain plunger, where appropriate.

What is an emergency repair?

- Any repair that will threaten the health or safety of our residents or the wider public if it is not carried out immediately is an emergency.
- Any repair that will seriously damage the property if it is not carried out immediately is an emergency.

How long will I have to wait to have a repair carried out?

- We aim to have someone attend your property within 4 hours if you report an emergency repair.
- We aim to complete non-emergency repairs within 20 working days.

Please be aware that our contractors cannot always fix a problem on the first visit. If they cannot fix something, they will arrange a date and time to come back and finish the job.

Preparing for the repair

When waiting for a repair, it is important to clear space or move furniture so that the repair is accessible for the contractors. This will help them to carry out the works more quickly and minimise the risk of any accidental damage to possessions.

If you have any concerns or think you may have difficulty clearing space for the contractor, please let your PMO know as soon as possible.

Household pests

You are responsible for dealing with household pests such as ants, bees, bedbugs, wasps, cockroaches, rats, and mice within your property. Contact the environmental health department at your local council for advice. Go to www.gov.uk/report-pestproblem for more information

If you cannot deal with the pest issue, or if you have a pest problem in a communal area then contact your PMO.

Utilities

Mains water/ drainage

Mains water and drainage supplier:

Thames water

Web: <u>www.thameswater.co.uk</u> Tel: 0800 316 9800 Billing and account enquiries/ Tel: 0800 980 8800

Location of meter and stopcock:

Water meter is located within utility cupboard.

Apartment stopcock is in the utility cupboard of your property adjacent to the HIU.



The hot and cold-water supply to the kitchen and bathroom areas can be isolated separately under the sink. Please contact your PMO if the entire apartment requires water to be switched off.

Thames water supply the incoming mains water through an underground service pipe fitted with a stop valve at the boundary to the development for use by the water company in an emergency.

As water enters your home, its flow is controlled by the stopcock, which allows you to turn off the supply in an emergency or for maintenance.

There are soft joints around a few tiles to enable access to the bathroom services if needed. These are located on the worktop above the toilet, underneath the basin, under the bath and to the side of the basin. It's recommended all work is carried out by a competent person.





Preventing Blockages

Kitchen Wastepipes: If a blockage occurs and the sink is full of water try to remove the blockage by pushing a flexible drain rod down the plughole or by using a suction cup plunger to move water up and down the wastepipe. The risk of blockages can be reduced if you remember to put fat (which solidifies when cold) into an empty container rather than down the sink or drain.

Bath, Shower and Basins: Blockages here are normally caused by the build-up of hair and soap in the plug hole and become noticeable when the bath or basin starts to drain away more slowly. Clear bath or basin wastes with a 'Sani snake' (available from hardware stores) or by using a proprietary chemical cleaner (please read instructions carefully). You can purchase a small filter to put over the bath/ water outlet to collect hair, etc. and prevent blockages.

Electricity

Electrical supplier- Residential apartments have been registered with E.ON Next, however can be switched to the residents preferred supplier.

Web: Resident's preferred supplier, please check what suppliers are available within your area.

Tel: Resident's preferred supplier, please check what suppliers are available within your area.

Your electricity meter is in the Utility cupboard.



Consumer unit

The consumer unit for your apartment is in the Utility Cupboard.



Energy saving Tips

- 1. Turn your heating thermostat down by just 1°C, to save energy and reduce your heating bill
- 2. Close curtains, blinds, or shutters at night, to stop heat escaping through windows
- 3. Turn household appliances off at night those left on standby will still use energy
- 4. Turn lights off in rooms not being used
- 5. Only fill a kettle with the amount of water you need, and descale regularly
- 6. When buying household appliances, look for the energy saving recommendations and check their energy rating ('A' being the best rating)
- 7. When using a dishwasher, only run when it is full and use an economy programme for lightly soiled items

Light fittings

The light fittings in your property use energy efficient light bulbs. Although these lights may cost more, the cost saving in reduced energy bills will ensure money saving in the longer term. See below for electrical light fittings installed in your property.

Location	Supplier	Description	Colour
Living Room	Sycamore	Sycamore open downlight ref SY9606WH fitted with 5W LED lamp ref SY7534B/NW	S/S
Bedrooms	MK Electric	Pendant Set 3000k lamp holder. 60W LED equivalent.	White
Bathrooms	Sycamore	Over baths and showers – Sycamore IP65 downlight ref SY9668WH fitted with 5W LED lamp ref SY7534B/NW Remainder – Sycamore open	White
		downlight ref SY9606WH fitted with 5W LED lamp ref SY7534B/NW	
Utility Cupboard	MHS	Angled Batten Holder and LED E27 lamp	White
Kitchen	Sycamore	Sycamore open downlight ref SY9606WH fitted with 5W lamp ref SY7534B/NW	White
Balconies	ELD Jural	ELD Jural ref JURA1-AN fitted with a GUSYL7W-WW GU10 lamp	Black

For replacement bulbs contact your local electrical store.

Changing light bulbs

To change light bulbs, the light switch must be in the off position. It is advisable to replace the bulb with the same type of bulb that was removed.

For further information on energy saving lighting, visit, <u>www.energysavingtrust.org.uk/electricity/lighting</u>

Electrical alterations, including replacing light fixtures and fittings should only be carried out by a qualified electrician.

Cables may run in any position above a ceiling or under floor. Before fixing to walls, floors and ceilings always check for buried pipes and cables using a detector available from DIY stores.

Do not interfere with earth bonding cables connected to pipework and main earth connection.

Loss of power and troubleshooting

If your electricity goes off, start by checking to see if it is a power cut or a fault in your home. The easiest way to do this is to see if your neighbour's have electricity. If they do not have power either, then it is a power cut, and you should contact UK power networks.

UK Power Networks

Emergencies

Landline: 0800 31 63 105 Mobile: 0333 32 32 105

General enquiries Tel: 0845 601 4516

www.ukpowernetworks.co.uk

Once a power cut has been reported you can text power followed by your postcode, to 80876 and UK power networks will provide you with regular updates to your mobile phone, until your power is restored.

It isn't possible to predict a power cut however here are some precautions you can take in case a power cut occurs:

- Make sure you have multiple torches along with extra batteries
- Keep a plug-in telephone that does not require electricity remember that with cordless phones you may not be able to make phone calls once the batteries are dead
- Keep important documents safe and handy
- If your neighbours have power, then it could be a fault in your home.

Your trip switch may have turned itself off. If it has, try turning it back on. If it switches off again then one of your electrical appliances may be faulty. Your trip switch turns itself off to make sure you do not get injured by a faulty appliance. Once you have found the faulty appliance and turned it off, your power should stay on.

If you have only lost power in part of your home you may have a fault with your electrical wiring somewhere, in which case you should call a qualified electrician as soon as possible.

Energy and water efficiency

Tips for saving energy and money around your home:

Washing machines

- · Wash at the lowest temperature that will give efficient results.
- Wait until you have a full load or use the 'half load' setting to reduce water.
- Use short wash cycles for lightly soiled items

Washer dryers

• Washer dryers save space and often cost less than two separate machines. They usually hold less than a dedicated built tumble dryer – you can't wash a second load until the first load has finished drying, and they usually use an air/water heat exchanger, which means that heat

extracted in the condenser is lost to the drain. Washer dryers can give a perfectly satisfactory service.

- Wait until you have a full load before using the washer and/or tumble dryer.
- If the machine has an energy saving load setting, use it whenever possible.
- · Use low temperature settings for lightly soiled items

Fridges and freezers

- Try to keep your freezer at least three quarters full.
- Do not put warm food into the fridge.
- Defrost your fridge or freezer regularly and avoid leaving the door open longer than necessary.
- Check that the door seal on your fridge is working effectively by closing on a piece of paper to see if it is held tight. If your fridge builds up frost too quickly the door seal could be faulty.

Cooking

- Match pan sizes to ring and use pans that are appropriate for your type of hob.
- Where a long cooking time is needed use a conventional oven. However, a microwave oven is more economical for short cooking times, particularly for smaller quantities of food.
- When cooking with a microwave always follow the manufacturer's instructions and ensure that there are no "cool spots" left in the food. For toasting use a toaster rather than the grill.

Dishwashers

- Always wait until the machine is full before running it.
- For lightly soiled items some dishwashers have economy programmes that reduce the washing temperature and /or shorten the washing time.

Television sets

- When you choose your TV, consider buying a model that uses less electricity.
- Do not leave the TV switched 'on' if nobody is watching it.
- Do not leave the TV in 'stand-by' mode for long periods.

Irons

• Do not leave an iron switched 'on' if you are not going to use it within 5 minutes.

Kettles

- When you choose your kettle consider buying a jug-style model or an energy efficient one.
- Remove lime scale from your kettle regularly.
- When boiling water use a kettle not a pan.
- Only heat as much water as you need in the kettle but remember to always cover the element.

Computers/Laptops

• Switch your computer off when it is not in use.

Mobile phones

• Unplug phone chargers when not in use.

In the bathroom

- When brushing your teeth using a tumbler, instead of running the tap water for rinsing, can save nine litres of water per minute.
- Taking a shower instead of a bath can save up to 40% of the water that you use.
- Reducing the time you spend in the shower will save water and energy.
- Put the plug in the basin when washing hands or shaving, rather than leaving the tap running.

Heating & Hot Water

A wet underfloor heating system will be installed to all the rooms except bathrooms. There will be digital programmable thermostats provided to the rooms.



Heating and hot water is distributed in your home via the HIU, which is in your utility cupboard. Hot water is produced by the HIU as per your requirement.

Location of the thermostat varies; this is typically on the entry to each room.

Heating and hot water consumption is measured by a heat meter, which is visible on your HIU and should be read during your handover appointment with your customer liaison.



Towel Radiator is in the bathroom, these are controlled by the thermostat directly outside the bathroom, temperature is detected via the air temperature sensor in the bathroom. There are two types of towel radiators:





Television

Sky Q

Telephone: 0844 241 1653

Website: www.sky.com/tv/sky-q

You will be provided with a communal sky dish and cabling to enable Sky Q, Freeview, Hotbird installations to all habitable rooms. Contact the completions team to apply and register for the service.

TV licensing

Telephone: 0300 790 6165

Website: www.tvlicensing.co.uk

TV aerials have been provided to receive digital TV signals. If you would like to watch television as it is being broadcast, you will need to purchase a television license. Please note, your television license does not automatically move with you; you will need to notify tv licensing, so they can update your details to ensure you are correctly licensed at your new address.

Telephone and Internet



A white Deta ref S1987 comms plate in back box ref DB184 will be provided in the living room TV position containing the following modules:

- 2 x double sockets
- TV (Freeview)
- SkyQ (2 coax)
- RJ45 (wired from router location in store)
- BT slave (wired from master in store)

TV (Terrestrial and Freeview only) outlets to be provided to all bedrooms.





Heating

Under Floor Heating

The underfloor heating system is a series of pipes laid beneath your floor screed which carry hot water through them to heat your home. The pipework runs back to a manifold in your services cupboard which is connected to the heat interface unit (HIU).

Please note, the underfloor heating will take time to heat up the space and likewise takes time to cool down when switched off. The underfloor heating will provide heating to the living and dining areas, kitchens, bedrooms, and entrance hallways in your apartment.

Room thermostats sense the temperature in each room and open or close valves on the manifold to allow the hot water to run through the pipes until the room is warm enough. When the stat senses the room is warm enough it closes the valve to stop the flow of water.

It's important to never drill or screw anything into your floor. You risk damaging the underfloor heating pipework and potentially flooding your apartment.

Thermostats

To control the temperature within your property it is important to learn how they work, to do this please read the manufactures instructions.

Adjust thermostat to desired room temperature.

Please refer to the appendices for full user manual.

Towel rail thermostat: Heatmiser neo Stat-e V2

Heating thermostat: Heatmiser Touch V2.



Mechanical Ventilation

Ventilation in your home is supplied by Mechanical Ventilation Heat Recovery Unit or MVHR.

The ventilation unit installed in your home will not only ensure that your property has a good level of indoor air quality, but it will also protect the fabric of your home from condensation and remove odours and indoor pollutants, resulting in a healthier living environment for you. **For tips on how to reduce moisture in your home please see page 33.**

The ventilation system extracts warm, damp air from the home and draws in fresh air from the outside via ducted ceiling mounted terminals. The warm, extracted air is passed through a heat exchanger to recover the heat before being expelled outside. The cool, fresh air from outside is also passed through the heat exchanger, without coming into direct contact with the extracted air where it is pre-warmed before being pumped into your home. The unit also has a summer bypass mode. This ensures that in the summer, fresh air is not passed over the heat exchanger and as such reduces the risk of overheating.

The ventilation system to your kitchen and bathroom where excessive moisture can be generated while cooking or using the bathroom is boosted, booster switch is connected to the bathroom light or within the kitchen. Purge function is located within the utility cupboard, purge function is for overheating if activated all heat will be lost to the apartment.

There are two types of MVHR Units across the scheme, please check which one has been installed to your home:



Cleaning filters

The air filters (on the top) should be cleaned regularly, the filters can be removed and cleaned with a vacuum cleaner. Please refer to the cleaning and maintenance in the relevant manual within the appendices.

NOx filters

NOx filters have been installed within the MVHR units or ventilation ducts to filter polluted air entering your apartment. There are two types of filters dependent on the MVHR unit installed to your apartment.



Mitsubishi MVHR model VL-500CZPVU-L-E, NOx filter is integrated within the MVHR unit.

NOx filter model is WNB-190. Filters are disposable and are noncleanable/reusable. Filters need to be replaced approximately every six months (replacement interval differs depending on the operating environment).





Vectaire MVHR model Maxi Plus BY, NOx filter is installed within the duct runs. Access is via a metal access hatches within the ceiling (location varies).

NOx filter model is AAC Nitrosorb Eurovent Ltd.



Please note that the filter needs to be replaced by a competent person using the following personal protective equipment: FFP3 dust mark and nitrile gloves for handing the filters. Please follow the replacement strategy on the following page.

LEADERS IN AIR & LIQUID PHASE FILTRATION TECHNOLOGY

urovent

AAC Swiftpack[®] NITROSORB[®] - Guide to Filter Testing & Replacement



Address: AAC Eurovent Ltd, AAC House, Unit K, Maybrook Industrial Estate, Maybrook Road, Brownhills, West Midlands. WS8 7DG. UK Tel: 08444 77 4884 | Fax: 08444 77 4797 | International Callers Tel: +44 (0) 1543 379823 Email: sales@aaceurovent.co.uk | Website: www.aaceurovent.co.uk All graphics and text on this page are protected by Copyright. © 2014 AAC Eurovent[®]. AAC Eurovent is continuously improving its products & reserves the right to alter designs without prior notice



AAC Swiftpack® NITROSORB® - Guide to Filter Testing & Replacement

AAC Colourcell®: Media Life Chart



* The Residual Capacity Test (RCT)

The AAC Colourcell[®] changes colour as the Media is used up. The Starting Colour is White, gradually changing to a Bright Pink when fully spent, and indicating a change of NITROSORB[®] Media may be required. This can be qualified with an RCT test that AAC Eurovent can conduct by receiving a NITROSORB[®] Filter Cell from the unit.

Additional Notes:

- The AAC NITROSORB® Filter Cell Media should last between 2-5 years.
- Replacement NITROSORB® Filters can be supplied as a complete set.

OR

- If the existing Filters are sent to AAC Eurovent Ltd and received in good condition, we will empty and re-fill those Filters, including safe disposal of the spent Media, and return them to you
- A replacement Pre-Filter can be supplied, which should be replaced at between 6 12 month intervals.
- Please pack all Filter Cells well to prevent them from being damaged in transit. All Cells should be sent to AAC Eurovent Ltd with a pre-supplied Special Delivery label. This will be posted to you on receipt and payment of your order.
- The turn-around time for Filters being serviced with new Media inside them is between 5 10 working days.

For pricing on replacement spares please contact the AAC Eurovent Sales office on 08444 77 4884

Address: AAC Eurovent Ltd, AAC House, Unit K, Maybrook Industrial Estate, Maybrook Road, Brownhills, West Midlands. WS8 7DG. UK Tel: 08444 77 4884 | Fax: 08444 77 4797 | International Callers Tel: +44 (0) 1543 379823 Email: sales@aaceurovent.co.uk | Website: www.aaceurovent.co.uk

The information contained within this brochure was correct at the time of print. All graphics and text on this page are protected by Copyright. © 2014 AAC Eurovent[®]. AAC Eurovent is continuously improving its products and reserves the right to alter designs without prior notice.

Looking after your new home

Lubrication

There are many areas within your new property that will benefit from regular lubrication. It is recommended that window hinges and door mechanisms are regularly lubricated to keep them in good working order.

Door seals

The condition of all door seals should be examined at six-monthly intervals. If the seal is missing, a part or completely, it should be replaced immediately. It is necessary to replace like with like and the use of any seal, other than that originally installed, may jeopardise the performance of the door. Seals should be fitted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Ironmongery

Stainless steel and chrome finishes should be cleaned at least every six months with a dry cloth or duster and washed periodically with a soft cloth and soapy water and dried with a clean cloth. Do not use abrasive materials for regular cleaning. Acetones or solvents can be used to remove grease marks or paint from stainless steel finishes if needed. There are also special products available for removing scratches or rust from stainless steel. Always follow the manufacturer's instructions when using cleaning products.

DIY

When hanging pictures care must be taken to not disturb or damage any pipes or electric cabling that may lie beneath the surface of the wall. It is strongly recommended that you use a cable/ pipe detector, which can be bought from most major DIY stores.

Plasterboard should be able to take a weight of approximately 10kg using appropriate plasterboard fixings.

Due to this weight limitation, it is not advised that you fix heavy objects to plasterboard walls e.g. Flat screen tv unless the relevant provisions have been allowed for. Reinforcement has been provided above the media plates to support a flat screen TV, please check where this is before installing.

Redecorating

If you plan to redecorate your home, we recommend that you wait for the drying out process is complete, which usually takes between 6 and 18 months. Paint that is applied too soon may crack as the moisture in the construction evaporates. We recommend using emulsion paint to assist in drying out process.

Alterations

Please note that structural or material alterations are not permitted. Please contact your PMO for further guidance.

Reducing condensation

Condensation is caused by steam or water vapour when it comes into contact with cold surfaces (in the same way that steam in the bathroom condenses on the window).

Once materials have dried out, you should no longer experience significant condensation. However, normal daily activities produce a great deal of water vapour, which may cause condensation if allowed to spread around the home.

Measures you can take to control condensation:

- · Cover pans when cooking and do not leave kettles boiling
- Put washing outdoors to dry if you can. If you use a tumble dryer, make sure that it is vented to the outside air (unless it is a self-condensing type). DIY vent kits are available.
- Use the cooker hood and/or extractor fans and keep the doors closed when cooking, washing, and bathing.
- Do not switch off the main isolator switch to the extractors in the bathroom or kitchen at any time, as they are needed to ventilate these rooms.
- Regularly open windows to encourage air changes.

Ventilation is needed to get rid of the moisture that is naturally produced every day in your home. Your home will only maintain a healthy internal environment when ventilation systems are running. You risk damage to your health and home if you turn these off or block outlets.

Homes where the heating is off all day because the occupants are out, are more likely to suffer condensation problems than those heated more continuously. This is because, when normal activities such as washing and cooking are carried out in the evening, the home has been unheated for long periods and the surfaces are cold.

Make sure the heating timer is set so that your home is warm by the time you return home. During very cold weather it is better to leave the heating on during the day to maintain an even temperature. The temperature can be set a few degrees lower and turned up when you return.

Most heating systems operate inefficiently if turned completely on and off. Use your thermostat to control heating operation. This will be more efficient and help to reduce fuel bills.

Remember that condensation is not normally a building fault. Learning to control moisture levels is a vital part of living in modern, well insulated, home.

Bathroom & Kitchen Care

Sanitaryware

To prevent a build-up of dirt and limescale, acrylic and ceramic sanitaryware should be wiped down immediately after use with a soft cloth and thoroughly cleaned with warm soapy water, a cream cleaner or multi-purpose surface cleaner on a weekly basis.

Many household chemicals such as paint stripper, nail varnish remover, household bleach, abrasive cleaning agents, perfume, aftershave, or strong disinfectants can cause damage and should not be allowed to come into contact with your sanitaryware.

If such chemicals do accidentally get in contact with your sanitaryware then it is advised that you rinse the affected area with sufficient water to completely remove the chemical.

In hard water areas mild lime-scale remover may be used from time to time.

Never leave strong bleach or cleaners in the WC bowl for extended periods of time or overnight. Never mix different cleaners in the WC bowl as this may give off poisonous or volatile gases.

To avoid damaging internal fittings do not put bleach products in the cistern.

When cleaning your sanitaryware the manufacturer's instructions take precedent over the above recommendations and should be always followed. The item should be rinsed and dried with a soft cloth after cleaning to provide the best finish.

Kitchen Sink

Your stainless-steel kitchen sink is generally resistant to most household items and is very hard wearing, however the following substances should not be allowed to come into contact with the stainless-steel surface, mortar, cement, plaster, concrete, tile cement, grout, undiluted bleach, acids, silver dip.

Daily cleaning of your sink should be carried out using cream-based cleaners on a soft cloth. This should be adequate to remove such marks as tea stains and grease. More abrasive cleaners such as scouring powders, should not be used. The everyday film of limescale, which in hard-water areas, can be quickly removed using a standard cream cleaner but, should a thicker limescale layer form, then this will require treatment with a proprietary limescale remover and a soft brush.

It is likely that during its use the stainless-steel surface will scratch, you can reduce the appearance of scratches by using a stainless-steel cleaner.

Units & Doors

It is important that you treat all cupboards with care in order maintain their appearance and functionality. Units and doors can be cleaned by using a soft damp cloth with warm water and a mild detergent, ensure to wipe excess water off immediately to ensure water is not left 'standing' on the surfaces.

Worktops

Your kitchen worktop has a Caesarstone Pebble finish.

Caesarstone is a non-porous surface and therefore incredible impenetrable, dense, and resilient, thereby providing longevity. For regular cleaning of Caesarstone surfaces, simply use soap and water with no need for sealing. This is almost effortless to maintain.

One of the characteristics that makes these surfaces stand out is their high resistance to knocks. However, avoid striking areas of the surface that due to the fabrication of design, may be slightly weaker (pointed corners, fine edges, etc.).

To remove stains, gently rub with an approved cleaner and rinse. It is recommended to use your regular home cleaning products. However, prevent the finish by wiping away the spills and splashes. Please always keep the surface dry. Avoid scratches by using a cutting board and clear away sharp objects.

To get rid of rust and metal marks, place a small amount of Barkeeper's Friend power spray or oxalic acid on a damp cloth. Wipe in a circular motion, very gently. Avoid using abrasive scour pad. Rinse thoroughly with warm water and dry with a soft cloth.
Apartment Finishes & Floor Finishes

Location	Supplier	Description	Colour
All apartment floors (except bathroom and bedroom)	DURECO	12mm x 1285mm x 192mm DURECO woodstrip laminate on Sonic classic 3mm comfort standard underlay.	A06 Oak Nordic Beige
Apartment Bedroom including wardrobes	Clarendon	Elite Twist (carpet)	Pewter
Apartment walls and ceilings	Dulux	Matt Emulsion (except to bathrooms which have ceilings in white GRP)	White
Apartment skirting throughout	Riverside	Ex 100mm and 75mm square edge with arris removed	White Satinwood
Bathrooms flooring and walls	Saloni Street	Ceramic tiles 600 x 300	Ceniza
Bathrooms vanity	Vitra UK Itd	Cabinet, 1200 x 700 x 150, 3 door Mirror fronted, white carcass.	
Ironmongery	London Architectural Hardware	Carlisle Brass Trend SZM160CPSN	Satin Chrome
Wardrobes	Commonfield	Commonfield Series 700. Front frame only comprising 2 silver mirror doors, 18mm Egger Dust Grey (ref U732ST9) interiors to provide single shelf and hanging rail.	See Description
Blinds	Enviroscreen		Dart Beige
Kitchen Units	Urban Myth	Handleless edged doors, soft close with 18mm U708 ST9 light grey carcass. Drawer runners to be metal with nylon rollers.	Denim Blue egger ref U540 ST9
Kitchen Worktops	Touchstone	20mm stone without grooved drainer	Caesarstone Pebble
Kitchen under cabinet lights	Sycamore Lighting	Mains operated Sycamore Solaris recti slimline LED ref SY7923 cabinet lights mounted under wall cabinets	
Sink	Blanco	Blanco Supra 500 single bowl undermount	Stainless steel
Тар	Vado	Vado AX-MET-150-C/P fitted with a 9L/m restrictor	Chrome
Splashback	Johnsons	PRS12 200x100 tile laid brick bond extending up to wall units, wall mounted hood above hob	Satin white with dark grey grout to match worktop, graphite trims

Kitchen Appliances

Appliance	Description	Supplier
Induction Hob	PUE611BB5B	Bosch
Oven	Integrated Oven ref HHF133BS0B- Stainless Steel	Bosch
Extractor Hood	Miro M201 60cm wide ref 26421	Miro
Fridge/Freezer	Fully Integrated Fridge Freezer Ref. KIV87NSF0G	Bosch
Dishwasher	Fully Integrated Dishwasher 600mm Wide: SMV40C40GB	Bosch
Washer Dryer freestanding in utility cupboard	Freestanding Washer/Dryer Ref. WNA14490GB	Bosch

Appliance Instruction Manuals & Warranties:

For further information on your appliance, please refer to your appliance manuals, which can be found in the appendices of this manual. Should you misplace any of your appliance instruction manuals over time, you can refer to the manufacturer website and download a pdf version of your appliance, by providing the model number.

You are responsible for registering your appliances for them to be covered under the manufacturer's warranty. Should you experience a problem with any of the white goods installed in your property during the first two years following legal completion, you should contact the manufacturers directly, you may be asked to provide evidence of your move in date.

Sanitaryware Schedule

Location	Item	Details	Manufacturer
	Washbasin	Gap semi recessed- A32747S000- White	Roca
Bathroom	Basin taps	Life mono bloc basin mixer with click clack waste- Chrome	Vado
	Basin taps flow restrictors	5 L/m flow spray insert- FR-100/5-PLA	
	WC	Wall hung rimless Gap with soft close seat- A34647L000 and Z8014770004- White Duplo 820mm frame with (4/3L flush) cistern and operating panel- A8901210A0 and A890095001- White	Roca
	Bath	Contessa anti-slip steel no tap holes Legs set with clicker waste 2358J0000 291021000 WG-71389- C/P- White	Roca
	Bath panel	Tiled	
	Bath filler and shower mixer	Wall mounted exposed valve with hose, multi-function handset and slide rail- Chrome AX-SIR-123T-C/P AX-SIR-MFSRK-DB-C/P	Vado
	Mixer to shower enclosures	Wall mounted exposed valve with hose, multi-function handset and slide rail- Chrome AX-SIR-149T-CP AX-SIR-MFSRK-DB-C/P	Vado
	Shower flow restrictors	8 L/m restrictor- FR-SHOWER/8-C/P	
	Wall storage unit above WC/ basin	Approx. 1200 x 600 x 150 mirror fronted wall unit Ref. 57085	Vitra
	Over bath screen	Innov8 two-part panel- Silver with plain glass	Roman Refined Showering
Bathroom	Towel radiators	600 x 1200 / 1600 x 400 mm MHS Ref. NSPSCE-060/120- Chrome	MHS
	Toilet Roll Holder	Spa Ref SPA-180-C/P- Chrome	Vado
	Double robe hook to back of door	LIF-186-C/P-Chrome	Vado

Registering your appliance warranty

All appliances have a 2-year warranty from the date of your legal completion. It is your responsibility to register your appliances with the correct manufacturer to validate your guarantee for each individual appliance within your home.

Please register your warranty by phone or you can register online.

Appliance Cleaning & Maintenance

To reduce the risk of damaging the finishes irreparably please follow these guidelines:

- Use a soft cloth, slightly dampened with water and a mild detergent solution
- Buff dry with either a soft lint free cloth or paper towel ensuring all excess moisture is removed

Do not use the following on kitchen appliances, cupboards, and worktops:

- Scouring pads or similar products
- Abrasive or harsh cleaning agents
- High pressure cleaners

Product Care & Maintenance Description

Washer dryer	The outer parts and rubber components of the appliance can be cleaned using a soft cloth soaked in lukewarm soapy water.
Detergent dispenser drawer	Remove the dispenser by raising it and pulling it out. Wash under it under running water, this operation should be repeated frequently.
Hob	Always clean the hob after cooking to prevent a build-up of dirt. Clean the hob with a damp dish cloth and dry it with a cloth or towel to prevent limescale build-up. Only clean the hob once the heat indicator has gone out. For stubborn dirt is best removed with a glass scraper.
Fridge/ freezer	Remove the layer of frost regularly. Never clean the shelves or containers in the dishwasher. Wipe door seal with clear water and dry thoroughly with a cloth. Clean the appliance with a soft cloth, lukewarm water and a little PH neutral washing up liquid.
Extractor hood	Clean the metal filter after 8 to 10 weeks, this can be cleaned in a dishwasher, this can cause slight discoloration. Clean off any grease from all accessible parts of the housing, this reduces fire hazards. Clean the extractor hood with a hot detergent solution or a mild window cleaning agent.
Dishwasher Fill	detergent dispenser with detergent. Start applicant without utensils in the program with the highest rinsing temperature.

Windows, Door & Internal Security

Blackout roller blinds are fitted to the standard sized windows. For full height windows and doors, vertical blinds are fitted in your home.

Doors schedule:

Location	Description/model number	
Internal Doors	Standard ply flush painted (laminated core) set with architrave.	
	Satinwood paint to match adjacent wall.	
Apartment Door	Southern Doors & Cubicles, FD30S / 31Db doors. Self-Closing.	
	Standard height ply flush painted doors. Door satinwood grey ref	
	Dulux 30GG 25/018. Frame and architraves white satinwood.	
	Ironmongery Graphite.	

Maintenance

Maintaining your windows couldn't be simpler. All you must do is check them carefully at least once a year for the following signs:

- See additional information on how to use your windows in your handover pack and labels on windows.
- Look for (and remove) any airborne debris that might be trapped in between the frame and sash. To do this, open the window in the cleaning position.
- Wipe or brush clean all surfaces and check the weather seal is clean, dry, continuous, and undamaged. Never get any paint on the weather seal as this will reduce the window's performance.
- Check that the handle moves freely and smoothly. If they are stiff, carefully use a recommended lubricant on the locking tongues/bolts while in their extended position
- Check the glass does not have any water vapour inside the sealed unit or that the glass is damaged.
- Check all timber surfaces for damage and note if the finishing (paint etc.) needs refreshing.
- Check all handle and ventilator controls are not loose. If they are, then tighten them with an appropriate screwdriver. Tighten enough so the handles and controls work freely without being too loose. Do not overtighten.
- If in any doubt or you need help with anything to do with maintenance refer to Operation Manual.

Windows will be cleaned externally by your landlord.

Doors Locks

Your doors are fitted with unique locks. The door and lock mechanism are constructed to resist unauthorised entry in line with Secured by Design guidelines and UK security regulations. When leaving your home, ensure that all windows and doors are locked.

Your balcony/terrace doors have door stops to stop them opening more than 90 degrees, and they have been designed in accordance of the windspeed for strength. But no wind break type system.

Entryphone System

A wall mounted touch screen video links to the main entrance door to comply with Secured by Design. This enables you to see who is trying to gain access to your house and for you to communicate with them and allow access.

You will be provided access via key fob readers. Please refer the system user manual in the appendicies.



Fire Safety

The apartment that has a fire is immediately evacuated. Due to the level of compartmentation between each of the apartments and to reduce false alarms, the other apartments are to **stayput** unless advised otherwise by the Fire Services. Your home has been fitted with an emergency evacuation alarm, if this sounds, please evacuate your home following the fire escape route. A larger copy of the escape route below has been added to the appendices.

Alterations or modifications to any part of your home could affect its ability to stop a fire spreading. Therefore, before any such work is carried out, we strongly advise that you seek professional advice and the permission of the freeholder via the managing agent.

Please refer the location map below to know your fire escape route for your apartment block.



For full sized plan please refer to Appendices.

FIRE ESCAPE ROUTE MAP (BLOCK C)

Fire alarm operation

Do not paint your alarm, or allow water or dust to contaminate your alarm:

- Regularly check that the green mains indicator light on the cover is on
- Test weekly press and hold the Test/Hush button on the alarm for 10 seconds. The alarm will sound loudly and the red light on the cover should flash rapidly
- If the alarm beeps and the red-light flashes at the same time the battery is depleted ensure green mains power light is on
- Check the red light on the cover flashes every 40 seconds, to ensure that the detector has performed an automatic self-test.
- The red indicator will flash rapidly to show an alarm condition for the smoke detector
- In 'Test' mode the alarm will perform a self-test and emit the alarm sound

- When in 'hush' mode the alarm enters a ten-minute period instead of the normal 40 seconds to indicate the sensitivity is reduced, and will then automatically reset itself
- When interconnected to other mains powered alarms, an alarm on one detector will trigger all other interconnected alarms within one second (only the triggered alarm will flash a red indicator)
- Aim to replace the batteries once a year to avoid them going flat. If your routine testing indicates low battery, please replace them as per the instructions provided in the user manual in the appendix.
- Evacuation alert sounder is wired in and connected to the evacuation panel at ground floor level. This should only be sounded in the event of an emergency by the fire brigade or responsible person for the estate. The sounder has been pre-set, please refrain from altering the sounder. It is positioned centrally to ensure 85dB is received at every bedroom door entrance (door open). If a lounder or quieter sound is required please contact your PMO.

Item	Location	Description/model number	Image
Smoke detectors	Apartments	Aico-Ei13024 Hard wired alarm Click here to be directed to YouTube clip of detector audio to familiarise yourself with the sound	EDDA Edda Edda Multi-Smart Rev Ann Auto-Smart Rev A
Heat detectors	Apartments	Aico-Ei3028 Multi-Sensor Heat alarm Click here to be directed to YouTube clip of detector audio to familiarise yourself with the sound	Encode Carlos Contractor Contract
Evacuation Alert system Sounder	Apartments near front entrance	AXIS-CWS & AXIS-WSM Supplier name: Advanced Click audio file here to familiarise yourself with the sound	

Fire doors

The front doors throughout the development are fire rated. The stairs are a protected area and internal doors onto the stairs are also fire rated.

Sprinkler System

A sprinkler system has been installed within each apartment for fire safety. When a sprinkler head is activated (by a high temperature) the sprinkler will activate, and water will begin to

flow. The sprinkler system is maintained by a certified sprinkler company to Hall & Kay Maintenance regime employed by PMO. Any damage to the sprinkler head must be immediately reported to your PMO. Do not decorate over the sprinkler head.



Contents Insurance

Residents are responsible for obtaining and maintaining insurance coverage for their personal property (for example, clothing, furnishings, carpets, appliances, etc.).

Please arrange contents insurance for your possessions. We do not insure you for either the contents of your home or your personal possessions and cannot be responsible for these. It is strongly advisable that you arrange a comprehensive insurance policy covering you for fire, burglary, theft, storm, flood, and other risks as soon as you move in. Various items within your apartment (for example, kitchen fixtures and fittings, but not domestic appliances) are covered under the Landlord's insurance, along with any contents of the communal areas. Vehicles and bicycles kept within the estate are the owner's responsibility to insure them.

Local Area

Accident and E	cident and Emergency			
Central	Address: Acton Ln, London NW10 7NS			
Middlesex	Phone: 020 8965 5733			
Hospital				
Royal Free	Address: Pond St, London NW3 2QG			
Hospital	Phone: 020 7794 0500			
Acton Fire	Address: Gunnersbury Ln, London W3 8EA			
Station	Phone: 020 8555 1200			
Acton Police	Address: 250 High St, London W3 9BH			
Station				
Transport				
Bus stops	Wales Farm Road (SW)			
	Stop C- 218, 260, 266, 440, 487, N266			
	North Acton Station (W)			
	Stop B- 266, BL-1, BL-2, N266			
	North Acton Station (S)			
	Stop Z- 260, 266, 440, 487, BL-1, BL-2, BL1, N266			
	Wales Farm Road (N)			
	Stop A- 266, N266			
Trains	North Acton Underground Station (Central Line)			
	Eastbound- Epping & Woodford			
	Westbound- Ealing Broadway & West Ruislip			
	Royal Park (Piccadilly Line)			
	Heathrow Terminal 5 to Cockfosters			
	Acton Main Line (TEL Rail)			
	London Paddington to Heathrow Terminal 5			
	London Paddington - Reading			
	Shenfield to London Liverpool Street			
GP				
Western	Address: 56 Western Ave, London W3 7TY			
Avenue	Phone: 020 8743 4133			
Surgery	3-minutes (by drive)			
Cloister Road	Address: 41-43 Cloister Rd, London W3 0DF			
Surgery	Phone: 020 8992 4331			
Pharmacy				
Jallas	Address: 311-313 Horn Ln, London W3 0BU			
Pharmacy	Phone: 020 8992 6558			
	In an emergency always call 999			
Post boxes	Mail Boxes Etc. North Acton			
	Address: Unit 3, Woodward Buildings, 1 Victoria Rd, North Acton, London			
	W3 6FA			
	Phone: 020 8993 6669			
	Priority Postbox (NHS)			
	Address: 1 Eastfields Rd, London W3 0AA			
	Horn Lane Post Office			
	Address: 214 Horn Ln, London W3 6PL			
	Phone: 020 8992 0159			

Banks	Lloyds bank Address: 308-312, Chiswick High Rd, Chiswick, London W4 1NS Phone: 0345 602 1997 Metro Bank Address: The Townhouse, 50 The Broadway, London W5 5JN Phone: 020 3402 7680
Schools	John Perryn Primary School Address: Long Dr, London W3 7PD Phone: 020 8743 5648 Web: www.johnperryn.ealing.sch.uk Old Oak Primary School Address: Mellitus Street, East Acton, London, W12 0AS Phone: 020 8743 7629 Web: www.oldoakprimary.co.uk
Supermarket	Tesco Express Address: 182 Ebbett Court, North Acton, London W3 6BX Phone: 0345 675 7118 Web: www.tesco.com Fu Lai Supermarket Address: Unit 5, Woodward Buildings, 1 Victoria Rd, North Acton, London W3 6FA Phone: 07410 965529 Tesco Superstore Address: 31 The Vale, London W3 7XA Phone: 0345 671 9376 Web: www.tesco.com West Acton Superstores Address: Noel Rd, West Acton, London W3 0DS Phone: 020 8992 1412
Parks and gardens	Westwood Park Address: Concord Rd, London W3 0SE West Park Address: 150 Hanbury Rd, London W3 8RJ North Acton Square Address: North, Victoria Rd, London W3 6UP Acton Park Address: The Vale, London W3 7JX
Place of worship	St. Dunstans Address: Friars PI Ln, London W3 7AW Phone: 020 8740 1383 Roman Catholic Church of The Holy Family Address: The Presbytery, Vale Ln, West Acton, London W3 0DY

	Phone: 020 8992 1308 Acton Hill Church Address: High Street Corner of, Woodlands Ave W3 9BU Phone: 020 8896 3669
Leisure centres	Acton Centre Address: High St, London W3 6LE Phone: 020 8049 8913 Web: <u>www.everyoneactive.com</u> Moberly Sports Centre Address: 25 Chamberlayne Rd, London NW10 3NB Phone: 020 3879 6669 Web: <u>www.everyoneactive.com</u>

Appendices

- Oven user manual
- Fridge Freezer user manual
- Dish Washer 45cm user manualm
- Dish Washer 60cm user manual
- Washer Dryer user manual
- Extract hood user manual
- MVHR Vectaire user manual
- MVHR Mitsubishi user manual
- Video Entry user manual
- Thermostat towel rail user manual
- Thermostat heating user manual
- HIU
- Ground Floor Fire Strategy plan

Oven User Manual



Register your new device on MyBosch now and get free benefits: bosch-home.com/ welcome



Built-in oven

HHF133B.0B, HHF313BR0B

[en] Instruction manual

Built-in oven

Table of contents

Several Intended use	. 4
Important safety information General information Halogen lamp	. 4 . 4 . 5
Causes of damage	. 6 . 6
Installation and connection. Electrical connection . Measures to be noted during transport .	. 6 . 6 . 7
Environmental protection	. 7 . 7 . 8
Getting to know your appliance Control panel Buttons and display Types of heating and functions Temperature Cooking compartment	. 8 . 9 . 9 10 10
Accessories Accessories Accessories included.	11 11 11 11
Before using for the first time	12 12 12
Operating the appliance Switching the appliance on and off Setting the heating function and temperature	13 13 13
Time-setting options Setting the cooking time Setting the end time Setting the time Setting the time Setting the time	13 13 14 15 15
Childproof lock.	15 15
Cleaning	16 16 17 17
Rails. Detaching and refitting the rails .	18 18

Appliance door
Detaching and attaching the oven door
Trouble shooting
compartment
Customer service
Tested for you in our cooking studio21General information.21Cakes and pastries22Poultry, meat and fish.24Preprepared products28Yoghurt29Acrylamide in foodstuffs.29Drying29
Prove dough
Test dishes

Additional information on products, accessories, replacement parts and services can be found at **www.bosch-home.com** and in the online shop **www.bosch-eshop.com**

Intended use

Read these instructions carefully. Only then will you be able to operate your appliance safely and correctly. Retain the instruction manual and installation instructions for future use or for subsequent owners.

The images shown in these instructions are for guidance only.

This appliance is only intended to be fully fitted in a kitchen. Observe the special installation instructions.

Check the appliance for damage after unpacking it. Do not connect the appliance if it has been damaged in transport.

Only a licensed professional may connect appliances without plugs. Damage caused by incorrect connection is not covered under warranty.

This appliance is intended for domestic use only. The appliance must only be used for the preparation of food and drink. The appliance must be supervised during operation. Only use this appliance indoors.

This appliance is intended for use up to a maximum height of 4000 metres above sea level.

This appliance may be used by children over the age of 8 years old and by persons with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities or by persons with a lack of experience or knowledge if they are supervised or are instructed by a person responsible for their safety how to use the appliance safely and have understood the associated hazards.

Children must not play with, on, or around the appliance. Children must not clean the appliance or carry out general maintenance unless they are at least 15 years old and are being supervised.

Keep children below the age of 8 years old at a safe distance from the appliance and power cable.

Always slide accessories into the cooking compartment the right way round.

→ "Accessories" on page 11

Important safety information

General information

▲ Warning – Risk of fire!

- Combustible items stored in the cooking compartment may catch fire. Never store combustible items in the cooking compartment. Never open the appliance door if there is smoke inside. Switch off the appliance and unplug it from the mains or switch off the circuit breaker in the fuse box.
- Loose food remnants, fat and meat juices may catch fire. Before using the appliance, remove the worst of the food remnants from the cooking compartment, heating elements and accessories.
- A draught is created when the appliance door is opened. Greaseproof paper may come into contact with the heating element and catch fire. Do not place greaseproof paper loosely over accessories during preheating. Always weight down the greaseproof paper with a dish or a baking tin. Only cover the surface required with greaseproof paper. Greaseproof paper must not protrude over the accessories.

▲ Warning – Risk of burns!

- The appliance becomes very hot. Never touch the interior surfaces of the cooking compartment or the heating elements. Always allow the appliance to cool down. Keep children at a safe distance.
- Accessories and ovenware become very hot. Always use oven gloves to remove accessories or ovenware from the cooking compartment.
- Alcoholic vapours may catch fire in the hot cooking compartment. Never prepare food containing large quantities of drinks with a high alcohol content. Only use small quantities of drinks with a high alcohol content. Open the appliance door with care.

Marning – Risk of scalding!

- The accessible parts become hot during operation. Never touch the hot parts. Keep children at a safe distance.
- When you open the appliance door, hot steam can escape. Steam may not be visible, depending on its temperature. When opening, do not stand too close to the appliance. Open the appliance door carefully. Keep children away.
- Water in a hot cooking compartment may create hot steam. Never pour water into the cooking compartment when the cooking compartment is hot.

Marning – Risk of injury!

- Scratched glass in the appliance door may develop into a crack. Do not use a glass scraper, sharp or abrasive cleaning aids or detergents.
- The hinges on the appliance door move when opening and closing the door, and you may be trapped. Keep your hands away from the hinges.
- If you leave the appliance door open, people may bump into it, resulting in injury. The appliance door must be kept closed both while the appliance is in operation and when it has finished.

Marning – Risk of electric shock!

- Incorrect repairs are dangerous. Repairs may only be carried out and damaged power cables replaced by one of our trained after-sales technicians. If the appliance is defective, unplug the appliance from the mains or switch off the circuit breaker in the fuse box. Contact the aftersales service.
- The cable insulation on electrical appliances may melt when touching hot parts of the appliance. Never bring electrical appliance cables into contact with hot parts of the appliance.
- Do not use any high-pressure cleaners or steam cleaners, which can result in an electric shock.
- A defective appliance may cause electric shock. Never switch on a defective appliance. Unplug the appliance from the mains or switch off the circuit breaker in the fuse box. Contact the after-sales service.

Halogen lamp

Marning – Risk of burns!

The bulbs in the cooking compartment become very hot. There is still a risk of burning your skin for some time after they have been switched off. Do not touch the glass cover. Avoid contact with your skin when cleaning.

Marning – Risk of electric shock!

When replacing the cooking compartment bulb, the bulb socket contacts are live. Before replacing the bulb, unplug the appliance from the mains or switch off the circuit breaker in the fuse box.

Causes of damage

General information

Caution!

- Accessories, foil, greaseproof paper or ovenware on the cooking compartment floor: do not place accessories on the cooking compartment floor. Do not cover the cooking compartment floor with any sort of foil or greaseproof paper. Do not place ovenware on the cooking compartment floor if a temperature of over 50 °C has been set. This will cause heat to accumulate. The baking and roasting times will no longer be correct and the enamel will be damaged.
- Aluminium foil: Aluminium foil in the cooking compartment must not come into contact with the door glass. This could cause permanent discolouration of the door glass.
- Water in a hot cooking compartment: do not pour water into the cooking compartment when it is hot. This will cause steam. The temperature change can cause damage to the enamel.
- Moisture in the cooking compartment: Over an extended period of time, moisture in the cooking compartment may lead to corrosion. Allow the cooking compartment to dry after use. Do not keep moist food in the closed cooking compartment for extended periods of time. Do not store food in the cooking compartment.
- Cooling with the appliance door open: Following operation at high temperatures, only allow the cooking compartment to cool down with the door closed. Do not trap anything in the appliance door. Even if the door is only left open a crack, the front of nearby furniture may become damaged over time. Only leave the cooking compartment to dry with the door open if a lot of moisture was produced whilst the oven was operating.
- Fruit juice: when baking particularly juicy fruit pies, do not pack the baking tray too generously. Fruit juice dripping from the baking tray leaves stains that cannot be removed. If possible, use the deeper universal pan.
- Extremely dirty seal: If the seal is very dirty, the appliance door will no longer close properly during operation. The fronts of adjacent units could be damaged. Always keep the seal clean. Never operate the appliance if the seal is damaged or missing. → "Cleaning" on page 16
- Appliance door as a seat, shelf or worktop: Do not sit on the appliance door, or place or hang anything on it. Do not place any cookware or accessories on the appliance door.
- Inserting accessories: depending on the appliance model, accessories can scratch the door panel when closing the appliance door. Always insert the accessories into the cooking compartment as far as they will go.
- Carrying the appliance: do not carry or hold the appliance by the door handle. The door handle cannot support the weight of the appliance and could break.

Installation and connection

This appliance is only intended to be fully fitted in a kitchen. Observe the special installation instructions.

Do not install the appliance behind a decorative door or the door of a kitchen unit, as this may cause the appliance to overheat.

Electrical connection

Only licensed specialists may connect the appliance. It is important that you comply with the requirements of your electricity supplier.

Any damage arising from the appliance being connected incorrectly will invalidate the warranty.

Caution!

If the supply cord is damaged, it must be replaced by the manufacturer, its service agent or similarly qualified persons in order to avoid a hazard.

- The appliance must be disconnected from the power supply whenever installation work is being carried out.
- The appliance fulfils the requirements of protection class I and may only be connected to an earthed socket.
- The mains power cable must be at least type H05 V V-F 3G, 1.5 mm².

Marning – Danger of death!

There is a risk of electric shock if you touch live components.

- Always make sure your hands are dry when you touch or hold the mains plug.
- Only pull out the mains cable by taking hold of the plug and removing the plug; never pull it out by the mains cable itself, as this could damage it.
- Never unplug the mains plug when the appliance is in operation.

Please note the following information and ensure that:

Notes

- The mains plug fits the socket.
- The cable cross section is adequate.
- The earthing system is properly installed.
- The mains cable is only replaced by a qualified electrician (if this is necessary).Spare mains cables can be ordered from our after-sales service.
- No power strips/multi-way connectors or extension cables are used.
- If using a residual current device, only use one that bears the mark A.
 The presence of this mark is the only way to be sure that it fulfils all the applicable regulations.
- The mains plug can be accessed at all times.
- The mains cable is not kinked, crushed, modified or severed.
- The mains cable does not come into contact with heat sources.

Measures to be noted during transport

Secure all mobile parts in and on the appliance using an adhesive tape that can be removed without leaving any traces. Push all accessories (e.g. baking tray) into the corresponding slots with cardboard at the edges, in order to avoid damaging the appliance. Place cardboard or similar between the front and rear side to prevent knocks against the inside of the glass door. Secure the door and, if available, the top cover to the appliance sides using adhesive tape.

Keep the original appliance packaging. Only transport the appliance in the original packaging. Observe the transport arrows on the packaging.

If the original packaging is no longer available

pack the appliance in protective packaging to guarantee sufficient protection against any transport damage.

Transport the appliance in an upright position. Do not hold the appliance by the door handle or the connections on the rear, as these could be damaged. Do not place any heavy objects on the appliance.

Environmental protection

Your new appliance is particularly energy-efficient. Here you can find tips on how to save even more energy when using the appliance, and how to dispose of your appliance properly.

Saving energy

- Only preheat the appliance if this is specified in the recipe or in the tables in the operating instructions.
- Leave frozen food to defrost before placing it in the cooking compartment.



 Use baking tins that are dark-coloured, painted black or have an enamel coating. These absorb the heat particularly well.





 Remove any unnecessary accessories from the cooking compartment.





 Open the appliance door as infrequently as possible when the appliance is in use.



It is best to bake several cakes one after the other. The cooking compartment stays warm. This reduces the baking time for the second cake. You can place two cake tins next to each other in the cooking compartment.



 For longer cooking times, you can switch the appliance off 10 minutes before the end of the cooking time and use the residual heat to finish cooking.

Environmentally-friendly disposal

Dispose of packaging in an environmentally-friendly manner.



This appliance is labelled in accordance with European Directive 2012/19/EU concerning used electrical and electronic appliances (waste electrical and electronic equipment -WEEE). The guideline determines the framework for the return and recycling of used appliances as applicable throughout the EU.

Getting to know your appliance

In this section, we will explain the indicators and controls. You will also find out about the various functions of your appliance.

Note: Depending on the appliance model, individual details and colours may differ.

Control panel

You can set your appliance's various functions on the control panel. Below, you will see an overview of the control panel and the layout of the controls.



and the time-setting options.

3 Temperature selector

Use the temperature selector to set the temperature for the heating function or select the setting for other functions. You can only turn the temperature selector clockwise from the "Off" position, until it offers resistance. Do not turn the selector beyond this

point. Note: On some appliances, the control knobs can be pushed in. To push the control knob in and engage it or to release it again, turn it to the "Off" position.

Buttons and display

You can use the buttons to set various additional functions on your appliance. You will be able to see the values for these on the display.

Symbo	bl	Meaning
₿.	Time-setting options	Tap the symbol repeatedly to select the timer \triangle , duration $I \rightarrow I$, end time $\rightarrow I$ and time.
	Childproof lock	Lock and unlock the oven functions on the control panel by pressing and holding the button for approx. 4 sec- onds.
-	Minus	Reduce setting values.
+	Plus	Increase setting values.

Buttons

The sensors are located under the individual buttons. They must not be pressed too firmly. Only touch the corresponding symbol.

Display

The value that can be set at the present time or that is elapsing will be shown in large digits on the display.

Types of heating and functions

Use the function selector to set the types of heating and other functions.

To make sure you always use the right type of heating to cook your food, we have explained the differences and applications below.

Type of heating		Use
8	3D hot air	For baking and roasting on one or more levels. The fan distributes the heat from the ring heating element in the back panel evenly around the cooking compartment.
®	Gentle hot air	For gently cooking selected types of food on one level without preheating. The fan distributes the heat from the ring-shaped heating element in the back panel around the cooking compartment. This heating function is used to measure both the energy consumption in air recirculation mode and the energy efficiency class.
~~	Grill, large area	For grilling flat items, such as steaks or sausages, for making toast, and for browning food. The whole area below the grill element becomes hot.
	Circulated air grilling	For roasting poultry, whole fish and larger pieces of meat. The grill element and the fan switch on and off alternately. The fan circulates the hot air around the food.

Other functions

Your new oven has yet more functions; see below for a brief description of these.

Function		Use
- <u>Ô</u> -	Interior lighting	Switches on the interior lighting; all other functions remain off. Makes it easier to clean the cooking compartment, for example.

Temperature

Use the temperature selector to set the temperature in the cooking compartment. You can also use it to select the settings for other functions.

For temperature settings above 250 °C, the appliance reduces the temperature to approx. 240 °C after approx. 10 minutes. If your appliance has the top/ bottom heating or bottom heating types, this reduction does not take place.

Position		Meaning
•	"Off" position	The appliance is not heating.
50-275	Temperature range	The temperature that can be set in the cooking compartment in °C.
1, 2, 3 or I, II, III	Grill settings	The configurable settings for the grill, large area and small area (depending on the appli- ance model). Setting 1 = low Setting 2 = medium Setting 3 = high

Temperature display

When the appliance is heating, the \$\$ symbol will be lit on the display. It goes out during pauses in the heating.

When you are preheating the appliance, the optimal time to place your food in the cooking compartment is when the symbol first goes out.

Note: Due to thermal inertia, the temperature displayed may be slightly different to the actual temperature inside the oven.

Cooking compartment

Various functions in the cooking compartment make your appliance easier to use. For example, the cooking compartment is well lit and a cooling fan prevents the appliance from overheating.

Opening the appliance door

If you open the appliance door when the appliance is in operation, the appliance will continue to operate as before.

Interior lighting

With most heating functions and other functions, the interior lighting in the cooking compartment will remain lit while the oven is in operation. When the function selector is turned to bring operation to an end, the lighting will go out.

By turning the function selector to the interior lighting setting, you can switch on the lighting without heating the oven. This makes it easier to clean your appliance, for example.

Cooling fan

The cooling fan switches on and off as required. The hot air escapes above the door.

Caution!

Do not cover the ventilation slots. Otherwise, the appliance may overheat.

So that the cooking compartment cools down more quickly after operation, the cooling fan continues to run for a certain period afterwards.

Accessories

Your appliance is accompanied by a range of accessories. Here, you can find an overview of the accessories included and information on how to use them correctly.

Accessories included

Your appliance is equipped with the following accessories:



meals. Universal pan

For moist cakes, pastries, frozen meals and large roasts.

It can be used to catch dripping fat when you are grilling directly on the wire rack.



Wire insert

For meat, poultry and fish. For inserting into the universal pan to catch dripping fat and meat juices.

Only use original accessories. They are specially adapted for your appliance.

You can buy accessories from the after-sales service, from specialist retailers or online.

Note: The accessories may deform when they become hot. This does not affect their function. Once they have cooled down again, they regain their original shape.

Inserting accessories

The cooking compartment has five shelf positions. The shelf positions are counted from the bottom up.

In some appliances, the highest shelf position is marked on the cooking compartment by the grill symbol.



Always insert accessories between the two guide rods for the shelf position.

Accessories can be pulled out approximately halfway without tipping.

When sliding accessories into the cooking compartment, ensure that the kink in the side rail is at the back. Only then will they lock in place.



Notes

- Hold the baking tray securely at the sides with both hands and slide it into the shelf supports, keeping it parallel. Do not move the baking tray from side to side as you slide it in, otherwise it will not go in easily and the enamelled surfaces may be damaged.
- Make sure that you always insert the accessories into the cooking compartment the right way round.
- Always insert the accessories fully into the cooking compartment so that they do not touch the appliance door.
- Take any accessories that you will not be using out of the cooking compartment.

Optional accessories

You can buy optional accessories from our after-sales service, from specialist retailers or online. You will find a comprehensive range of products for your appliance in our brochures and online.

Their availability and whether it is possible to order them online varies from country to country. See your sales brochures for more details.

Note: Not all optional accessories are suitable for every appliance. When purchasing, always quote the exact product number (E no.) of your appliance. → "Customer service" on page 21

Optional accessories

Wire rack

For cookware, cake tins and ovenproof dishes, and for roasts and grilled food.

Baking tray

For tray bakes and small baked items.

Universal pan

For moist cakes, baked items, frozen food and large roasts. It can be used to catch dripping fat when you are grilling directly on the wire rack.

Wire insert

For meat, poultry and fish.

For inserting into the universal pan to catch dripping fat and meat juices.

Professional pan

For preparing large quantities of food. Also ideal for moussaka, for example.

Lid for the professional pan

The lid turns the professional pan into a professional roasting dish.

Pizza tray

For pizzas and large round cakes.

Grill tray

Use for grilling in place of the wire rack or as a splatter guard. Use in the universal pan only.

Baking stone

For home-made bread, bread rolls and pizzas that you wish to have a crispy base.

The baking stone must be preheated to the recommended temperature.

Glass roasting dish

For stews and bakes.

Glass pan

For bakes, vegetable dishes and baked items.

Pull-out system, one level

Fitting pull-out rails at position 2 will allow you to pull accessories out further without them tipping.

Pull-out system, two levels

Fitting pull-out rails at positions 2 and 3 will allow you to pull accessories out further without them tipping.

Pull-out system, three levels

Fitting pull-out rails at positions 1, 2 and 3 will allow you to pull accessories out further without them tipping.

Before using for the first time

Before you can use your new appliance, you must make some settings. You must also clean the cooking compartment and accessories.

Initial use

The time will appear on the display once the appliance is connected to the power supply. Set the current time.

Setting the time

Make sure that the function selector is set to the "Off" position.

The time starts at "12:00".

1. Use the - or + button to set the time.

2. Touch the 🕒 button to confirm.

The current time will be shown on the display.

Cleaning the cooking compartment and accessories

Before using the appliance to prepare food for the first time, you must clean the cooking compartment and accessories.

Cleaning the cooking compartment

To remove the new-appliance smell, heat up the cooking compartment when empty and with the oven door closed.

Ensure that there is no leftover packaging, such as polystyrene pellets, in the cooking compartment and remove the adhesive tape that is in or on the appliance. Before heating the appliance, wipe the smooth surfaces in the cooking compartment with a soft, wet cloth. Keep the kitchen ventilated while the appliance is heating.

Make the settings indicated. You can find out how to set the type of heating and the temperature in the next section. \rightarrow "Operating the appliance" on page 13

Settings	
Heating function	3D hot air 🕲
Temperature	maximum
Duration	One hour

Switch off the appliance after the cooking time indicated.

After the cooking compartment has cooled down, clean the smooth surfaces with soapy water and a dish cloth.

Cleaning the accessories

Clean the accessories thoroughly using soapy water and a dish cloth or soft brush.

Operating the appliance

You have already learnt about the controls and how they work. Now we will explain how to apply settings on your appliance.

Switching the appliance on and off

Use the function selector to switch the appliance on or off. Turning the function selector to any position other than the "Off" position switches on the appliance. To switch off the appliance, always turn the function selector to the "Off" position.

Setting the heating function and temperature

It is very easy to apply the settings you require to your appliance using the function and temperature selector. To find out which heating function is best for which type of food, refer to the beginning of the instruction manual.

Example in the picture: 3D hot air at 190 °C.1. Use the function selector to set the heating function.



2. Use the temperature selector to set the temperature or grill setting.



The appliance will start heating after a few seconds.

Once the food is cooked, turn the function selector to the "Off" position to switch the appliance off.

Changing

The heating function and temperature can be changed at any time using the relevant selector.

Time-setting options

Your appliance has different time-setting options.

Time-setting option		Use
$\left \rightarrow\right $	Cooking time	Once the set cooking time has elapsed, the appliance will automatically stop heating.
\rightarrow	End time	Enter a cooking time and the required end time. The appliance will start up automatically so that it finishes cooking at the required time.
\square	Timer	The timer functions like an egg timer. It runs independently of the appliance when it is heating and does not affect the appliance.
Ŀ	Time	When no other function is running in the fore- ground, the appliance will show you the time of day on the display.

An audible signal will sound once the cooking time or timer duration has elapsed. You can cancel the audible signal early by touching the 🕒 button.

Setting the cooking time

You can set the cooking time for your food on the appliance. This prevents the food from accidentally being cooked for too long, and means that you do not have to stop what you are doing to switch off the oven.

The maximum time that can be set is 23 hours and 59 minutes. The cooking time can be set in 1-minute increments up to one hour, and then in 5-minute increments.

The cooking time will start at a different default value depending on which button you touch first: 10 minutes if you touch the - button and 30 minutes if you touch the + button.

Example in the picture: Cooking time of 45 minutes. Details in the diagram may differ from what you see on your appliance.

- 1. Set the type of heating and temperature or setting.
- Touch the ⁽) button twice. The cooking time I→I will be highlighted on the display.



3. Use the - or + button to set the cooking time.



The appliance will start heating after a few seconds. The remaining time will count down on the display.

The cooking time has elapsed

An audible signal will sound. The appliance will stop heating. The cooking time will be zero on the display.

Once the signal stops, you can touch the + button to set a new cooking time.

Once your food is cooked, turn the function selector to the "Off" position to switch the appliance off.

Changing and cancelling

You can use the - or + button to change the cooking time at any time. After a few seconds, the change will be applied.

To cancel, use the – button to reset the cooking time all the way to zero. The appliance will continue heating without a cooking time.

Setting the end time

You can delay the time at which cooking is due to finish. You can, for example, put your food in the cooking compartment in the morning and set the cooking time so that it is ready at lunch time.

Notes

- Make sure that food is not left in the cooking compartment for too long as it may spoil.
- Do not adjust the end time once the appliance is already in operation. Otherwise the cooking result may no longer be satisfactory.

The end of the cooking time can be delayed by up to 23 hours and 59 minutes.

Example in the picture: The time is 10.30 a.m., a cooking time of 45 minutes has been set and you want the food to be ready at 12.30 p.m.

- 1. Set the type of heating and temperature or setting.
- Touch the button twice and use the or + button to set the cooking time.
- Touch the

 button again.
 The end time → will be highlighted on the display.



4. Use the + or - button to delay the end time.



The appliance will apply the settings after a few seconds. The end time will be shown on the display. Once the appliance starts, the time will begin counting down.

The cooking time has elapsed

An audible signal will sound. The appliance will stop heating. The cooking time will be zero on the display.

Once the signal stops, you can touch the + button to set a new cooking time.

Once your food is cooked, turn the function selector to the "Off" position to switch the appliance off.

Changing and cancelling

You can use the – or + button to change the end time. After a few seconds, the change will be applied. The end time cannot be changed once the cooking time has already started to count down. Otherwise the cooking result would no longer be satisfactory.

To cancel, use the – button to set the end time all the way back to the current time plus the cooking time. The appliance will start to heat and the cooking time will start to count down.

Setting the timer

You can use the timer whether or not the appliance itself is in use. However, it is not possible to set a cooking time or end time.

The maximum time that can be set is 23 hours and 59 minutes. Up to 10 minutes, the timer duration can be set in 30-second increments. Above 10 minutes, the time increments become longer the higher the value.

The timer duration will start at a different default value, depending on which button you touch first: 5 minutes if you touch the - button and 10 minutes if you touch the + button.

2. Use the - or + button to set the timer duration. After a few seconds, the timer duration will start to count down.

Tip: If the set timer duration is the duration for which you wish to cook your food, use the cooking time. The appliance will then switch off automatically when it has finished cooking.

The timer duration has elapsed

An audible signal will sound. The timer duration will be zero on the display.

Touch any button to switch off the timer.

Changing and cancelling

You can use the - or + button to change the timer duration at any time. After a few seconds, the change will be applied.

To cancel, use the - button to reset the timer duration all the way to zero. The timer is now switched off.

Setting the time

Once the appliance has been connected to the mains or following a power failure, the clock will flash on the display. Set the time.

The function selector must be set to the "Off" position.

- 1. Use the or + button to set the time.
- The time will stop flashing.
- 2. Confirm by pressing the 🕒 button.

The appliance will apply the time you have set.

Changing the time

You can change the time again when you need to, e.g. from summer to winter time.

To do this, when the appliance is switched off, touch the \bigcirc button until the time flashes, and use the – or

+ button to change the time.

Childproof lock

Your appliance is equipped with a childproof lock so that children cannot switch it on accidentally or change any settings.

Notes

- If a hob is connected, it will not be affected by the childproof lock on the oven.
- After a power cut, the childproof lock will no longer be active.

Activating and deactivating

To activate the childproof lock, the function selector must be set to the "Off" position.

Press and hold the cm button for approx. 4 seconds.

SRFE appears in the display. This activates the childproof lock.

Note: If a timer duration \triangle has been set, this will continue to count down. While the childproof lock is active, the timer duration cannot be changed.

To deactivate the childproof lock, press and hold the C_{∞} button again for approx. 4 seconds until **SRFE** goes out on the display.

With good care and cleaning, your appliance will retain its appearance and remain fully functioning for a long time to come. We will explain here how you should correctly care for and clean your appliance.

Suitable cleaning agents

To ensure that the different surfaces are not damaged by using the wrong cleaning agent, observe the information in the table. Depending on the appliance model, not all of the areas listed may be on/in your appliance.

Caution!

Risk of surface damage

Do not use:

- Harsh or abrasive cleaning agents,
- Cleaning agents with a high alcohol content,
- Hard scouring pads or cleaning sponges,
- High-pressure cleaners or steam cleaners,
- Special cleaners for cleaning the appliance while it is hot.

Wash new sponge cloths thoroughly before use.

Tip: Highly recommended cleaning and care products can be purchased through the after-sales service. Observe the respective manufacturer's instructions.

\Lambda Warning – Risk of burns!

The appliance becomes very hot. Never touch the interior surfaces of the cooking compartment or the heating elements. Always allow the appliance to cool down. Keep children at a safe distance.

Area	Cleaning		
Appliance exterior			
Stainless steel front	Hot soapy water: Clean with a dish cloth and then dry with a soft cloth.		
	albumin (e.g. egg white) immediately. Corrosion can form under such flecks.		
	Special stainless steel cleaning products suitable for hot surfaces are available from our after-sales service or from specialist retailers. Apply a very thin layer of the cleaning product with a soft cloth.		
Plastic	Hot soapy water: Clean with a dish cloth and then dry with a soft cloth. Do not use glass cleaner or a glass scraper.		
Painted surfaces	Hot soapy water: Clean with a dish cloth and then dry with a soft cloth.		
Control panel	Hot soapy water: Clean with a dish cloth and then dry with a soft cloth.		
	Do not use glass cleaner or a glass scraper.		

Door panels	Hot soapy water: Clean with a dish cloth and then dry with a soft cloth. Do not use a glass scraper or a stainless steel scouring pad.
Door handle	Hot soapy water: Clean with a dish cloth and then dry with a soft cloth. If descaler comes into contact with the door han- dle, wipe it off immediately. Otherwise, any stains will not be able to be removed.

Appliance interior

Enamel surfaces and self-cleaning surfaces	Observe the instructions for the surfaces of the cooking compartment that follow the table.	
Glass cover for the interior light- ing	Hot soapy water: Clean with a dish cloth and then dry with a soft cloth. If the cooking compartment is heavily soiled, use oven cleaner.	
Door seal Do not remove.	Hot soapy water: Clean with a dish cloth. Do not scour.	
Door cover	made from stainless steel: Use stainless steel cleaner. Follow the manufac- turers' instructions. Do not use stainless steel care products. made from plastic: Clean using hot soapy water and a dish cloth. Dry with a soft cloth. Do not use glass cleaner or a glass scraper. Remove the door cover for cleaning.	
Rails	Hot soapy water: Soak and clean with a dish cloth or brush.	
Pull-out system	Hot soapy water: Clean with a dish cloth or a brush. Do not remove the lubricant while the pull-out rails are pulled out – it is best to clean them when they are pushed in. Do not clean in the dishwasher.	
Accessories	Hot soapy water: Soak and clean using a dishcloth or brush. If there are heavy deposits of dirt, use a stainless steel scouring pad. Enamelled accessories are dishwasher-safe.	

Notes

- Slight differences in colour on the front of the appliance are caused by the use of different materials, such as glass, plastic and metal.
- Shadows on the door panels, which look like streaks, are caused by reflections made by the interior lighting.
- Enamel is baked on at very high temperatures. This can cause some slight colour variation. This is normal and does not affect operation.
 The edges of thin trays cannot be completely enamelled. As a result, these edges can be rough.
 This does not impair the anti-corrosion protection.

Surfaces in the cooking compartment

The back wall in the cooking compartment is selfcleaning.You can tell this from the rough surface.

The base, ceiling and side panel are enamelled and have smooth surfaces.

Cleaning enamel surfaces

Clean the smooth enamel surfaces with a dish cloth and hot soapy water or a vinegar solution. Then dry them with a soft cloth.

Soften baked-on food remnants with a damp cloth and soapy water. Use stainless steel wire wool or oven cleaner to remove stubborn dirt.

Caution!

Never use oven cleaner in the cooking compartment when it is still warm. This may damage the enamel. Remove all food remnants from the cooking compartment and the appliance door before you next heat up the appliance.

Leave the cooking compartment open to dry after cleaning it.

Note: Food residues can cause white deposits to form. These are harmless and do not affect how the appliance works. You can remove these residues using lemon juice if required.

Cleaning self-cleaning surfaces

The self-cleaning surfaces are coated with a porous, matte ceramic layer. This coating absorbs and dispels splashes from baking and roasting while the appliance is in operation.

If the self-cleaning surfaces no longer clean themselves sufficiently and dark stains appear, they can be cleaned using targeted heating.

Making settings

Remove the rails, pull-out shelves, accessories and ovenware from the cooking compartment beforehand. Thoroughly clean the smooth enamel surfaces in the cooking compartment, the inside of the appliance door and the glass cover on the interior lighting.

- 1. Set the 3D hot air type of heating.
- 2. Set the maximum temperature.
- 3. Start the mode and leave it to run for at least one hour.

The ceramic coating is regenerated.

When the cooking compartment has cooled down, remove the brown or white residue with water and a soft sponge.

Note: During operation, reddish spots form on the surfaces. This is not rust, but residues from food. These spots are not harmful and do not restrict the cleaning ability of the self-cleaning surfaces.

Caution!

Do not use oven cleaner on the self-cleaning surfaces. This will damage the surfaces. If oven cleaner does get onto these surfaces, dab it off immediately using water and a sponge cloth. Do not rub the surface and do not use abrasive cleaning aids.

Keeping the appliance clean

Always keep the appliance clean and remove dirt immediately so that stubborn deposits of dirt do not build up.

🗥 Warning – Risk of fire!

Loose food remnants, fat and meat juices may catch fire. Before using the appliance, remove the worst of the food remnants from the cooking compartment, heating elements and accessories.

Tips

- Clean the cooking compartment after each use. This will ensure that dirt cannot be baked on.
- Always remove flecks of limescale, grease, starch and albumin (e.g. egg white) immediately.
- Use the universal pan for baking very moist cakes.
- Use suitable ovenware for roasting, e.g. a roasting dish.

🔰 Rails

With good care and cleaning, your appliance will retain its appearance and remain fully functional for a long time to come. This will tell you how to remove the shelves and clean them.

Detaching and refitting the rails

The rails can be removed for cleaning. The oven must have cooled down.

Detaching the rails

- 1. Lift up the front of the rail
- 2. and unhook it (figure A).
- 3. Then pull the whole rail forward
- 4. and remove it (Fig. B).



Clean the rails with cleaning agent and a sponge. For stubborn deposits of dirt, use a brush.

Refitting the rails

- 1. First insert the rail into the rear socket, press it to the back slightly (figure A),
- 2. and then hook it into the front socket (figure B).



The rails fit both the left and right sides. Ensure that, as shown in figure B, levels 1 and 2 are below and levels 3, 4 and 5 are above.

Appliance door

With good care and cleaning, your appliance will retain its appearance and remain fully functional for a long time to come. This will tell you how to remove the appliance door and clean it.

Detaching and attaching the oven door

For cleaning purposes and to remove the door panels, you can detach the oven door.

The oven door hinges each have a locking lever. When the locking levers are closed (figure A), the oven door is secured in place. It cannot be detached. When the locking levers are open in order to detach the oven door (Fig. B), the hinges are locked. They cannot snap shut.



Marning – Risk of injury!

Whenever the hinges are not locked, they snap shut with great force. Ensure that the locking levers are always fully closed or, when detaching the oven door, fully open.

Detaching the door

- 1. Open the oven door fully.
- 2. Fold up the two locking levers on the left and right (figure A).
- 3. Close the oven door as far as the limit stop. With both hands, grip the door on the left and right-hand sides. Close the door a little further and pull it out (figure B).



Attaching the door

Reattach the oven door in the reverse sequence to removal.

- 1. When attaching the oven door, ensure that both hinges are inserted straight into the opening (figure A).
- 2. The notch on the hinge must engage on both sides (figure B).



 Fold back both locking levers (figure C). Close the oven door.



\Lambda Warning – Risk of injury!

If the oven door falls out accidentally or a hinge snaps shut, do not reach into the hinge. Call the after-sales service.

Removing and installing the door panels

To facilitate cleaning, you can remove the glass panels from the oven door.

Removal

- 1. Detach the oven door and lay it on a cloth with the handle facing down.
- 2. Pull off the cover at the top of the oven door. Press in the tabs on the left and right using your fingers (fig. A).
- 3. Lift the top panel up and pull it out (fig. B).



4. Lift the panel up and pull it out (fig. C).



Clean the panels with glass cleaner and a soft cloth.

Marning – Risk of injury!

Scratched glass in the appliance door may develop into a crack. Do not use a glass scraper, sharp or abrasive cleaning aids or detergents.

Installation

During installation, make sure that the lettering "top right" is upside down at the bottom left.

- 1. Insert the panel at an angle towards the back (fig. A).
- 2. Insert the top panel at an angle towards the back into the brackets. The smooth surface must face outwards. (fig. B).



- 3. Put the cover back in
- place and press on it.
- 4. Attach the oven door.

Do not use the oven again until the panels have been correctly installed.

Additional door safety

When preparing meals with long cooking times, the oven door can reach very high temperatures.

Supervise small children and keep them away from the oven when the oven is in operation.

Additional safety devices have been fitted to prevent contact with the oven door. Always attach these safety devices when children could come near the oven.

You can purchase this optional accessory (11023590) from the after-sales service.

Trouble shooting

If a fault occurs, there is often a simple explanation. Before calling the after-sales service, please refer to the fault table and attempt to correct the fault yourself.

Rectifying faults yourself

You can often easily rectify technical faults with the appliance yourself.

If a dish does not turn out exactly as you wanted, you can find useful cooking tips and instructions at the end of this instruction manual. \rightarrow "Tested for you in our cooking studio" on page 21

Fault	Possible cause	Notes/remedy
The appliance is not working.	Defective cir- cuit breaker.	Check the circuit breaker in the fuse box.
	Power failure	Check whether the kitchen light or other kitchen appliances are working.
The time is flash- ing on the display.	Power failure.	Reset the time.
The settings on the appliance cannot be config- ured. A key sym- bol has lit up on the display or SRFE .	The child- proof lock is activated.	Deactivate the childproof lock by pressing and holding the button with the key symbol for approx. 4 seconds.

Marning – Risk of injury!

Incorrect repairs are dangerous. Do not attempt to repair the appliance yourself. Repairs must only be carried out by one of our trained after-sales engineers. If the appliance is defective, call the after-sales service.

Marning – Risk of electric shock!

Incorrect repairs are dangerous. Repairs may only be carried out and damaged power cables replaced by one of our trained after-sales technicians. If the appliance is defective, unplug the appliance from the mains or switch off the circuit breaker in the fuse box. Contact the after-sales service.

Error messages on the display

If an error message with " \mathcal{E} " appears on the display, e.g. $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{I}$, touch the button. This will reset the error message. Reset the time, if necessary.

If the fault was a one-off, you can continue to use your appliance as normal. If the error message appears again, call our after-sales service and quote the exact error message and the E no. of your appliance.

→ "Customer service" on page 21

Replacing the bulb in the top of the cooking compartment

If the cooking compartment light bulb fails, it must be replaced. Heat-resistant, 25 watt, 230 V halogen bulbs are available from the after-sales service or specialist retailers.

When handling the halogen bulb, use a dry cloth. This will increase the service life of the bulb. Only use these bulbs.

Marning – Risk of electric shock!

When replacing the cooking compartment bulb, the bulb socket contacts are live. Before replacing the bulb, unplug the appliance from the mains or switch off the circuit breaker in the fuse box.

Marning – Risk of burns!

The appliance becomes very hot. Never touch the interior surfaces of the cooking compartment or the heating elements. Always allow the appliance to cool down. Keep children at a safe distance.

- 1. Place a tea towel in the cold cooking compartment to prevent damage.
- 2. Turn the glass cover anti-clockwise to remove it (figure ■).
- Pull out the bulb do not turn it (figure 2). Insert the new bulb, making sure that the pins are in the correct position. Push the bulb in firmly.



- Screw the glass cover back on. Depending on the appliance model, the glass cover may have a sealing ring. If the glass cover has a sealing ring, put it back in place before screwing the cover back on.
- 5. Remove the tea towel and switch on the circuit breaker.

Customer service

Our after-sales service is there for you if your appliance needs to be repaired. We will always find an appropriate solution, also in order to avoid after-sales personnel having to make unnecessary visits.

E number and FD number

When calling us, please give the product number (E no.) and the production number (FD no.) so that we can provide you with the correct advice. The rating plate containing these numbers is found on the side of the oven door. To save time, you can make a note of the number of your appliance and the telephone number of the after-sales service in the space below, should it be required.

E no.	FD no.	

After-sales service 🗇

Please note that there will be a fee for a visit by a service technician in the event of a malfunction, even during the warranty period.

Please find the contact data of all countries in the enclosed customer service list.

To book an engineer visit and product advice

- **GB** 0344 892 8979
- Calls charged at local or mobile rate.
- IE 01450 2655 0.03 € per minute at peak. Off peak 0.0088 €

per minute. Rely on the professionalism of the manufacturer. You can therefore be sure that the repair is carried out by

can therefore be sure that the repair is carried out by trained service technicians who carry original spare parts for your appliances.

Tested for you in our cooking studio

Here, you can find a selection of dishes and the ideal settings for them. We will show you which type of heating and temperature are best suited to your dish. You will get information on suitable cooking accessories and the height at which they should be placed in the oven. You will also get tips about cookware and preparation methods.

Note: A lot of steam can build up in the cooking compartment when cooking food. Your appliance is very energy-efficient and radiates very little heat to its surroundings during operation. Due to the significant differences in temperature between the appliance interior and the external parts of the appliance, condensation may build up on the door, the control panel or the front panels of adjacent kitchen cabinets. This is a normal physical phenomenon. Condensation can be reduced by preheating the oven or opening the door carefully.

General information

Recommended setting values

The table lists the optimal heating function for various types of food. The temperature and cooking time depend on the amount of food and the recipe.For this reason, the table specifies setting ranges. Try using the lower value to start with. A lower temperature will result in more even browning. You can increase the temperature next time if necessary.

Note: Cooking times cannot be reduced by using higher temperatures. The food would only be cooked on the outside, but would not be fully cooked in the middle.

The setting values apply to food placed in the cooking compartment while the cooking compartment is still cold. This will save energy. If you preheat the oven, you can reduce the indicated baking times by several minutes.

Preheating is necessary for selected types of food – this is indicated in the table. Do not place your food and accessory into the cooking compartment until it has finished preheating.

If you wish to follow one of your own recipes, you should use the settings listed in the table for similar food as reference. Additional information can be found in the baking tips listed after the settings tables.

Remove any accessories that are not being used from the cooking compartment. This will allow you to achieve optimal cooking results while saving energy.

Gentle hot air heating function

Gentle hot air is an intelligent heating function that allows you to gently cook meat, fish and baked items. The appliance optimally controls the supply of energy to the cooking compartment. The food is cooked in phases using residual heat. This means that it remains more succulent and browns less. Depending on the method of preparation and the type of food, it is possible to save energy. If you open the appliance door before the food has finished cooking or if you preheat the appliance, you may not be able to achieve this result.

Only use genuine accessories for your appliance. These have been tailored to the cooking compartment and the heating functions of your appliance. Remove any accessories that are not being used from the cooking compartment.

Place the food into the empty cooking compartment before the oven is heated up. Select a temperature of between 120 °C and 230 °C. Always keep the appliance door closed when cooking. Only cook on one level when using this function.

The Gentle hot air heating function is used to measure both the energy consumption in air recirculation mode and the energy efficiency class.

Baking on one level

When baking on one level, use the following shelf positions:

- Position 2 tall baked items and tins/dishes on the wire rack
- Position 3 shallow baked items and baking trays

Baking on two or more levels

Use the hot air heating function. Items that are placed in the oven on baking trays or in baking tins/dishes at the same time will not necessarily be ready at the same time.

Baking on two levels:

- Universal pan, position 3
- Baking tray, position 1
- Baking tins/dishes on the wire rack
 First wire rack, position 3
 Second wire rack, position 1



Baking on three levels:

 Baking tray, position 5 Universal pan, position 3 Baking tray, position 1

You can cut energy use by cooking different items at the same time. Position baking tins/dishes either next to one another or offset on different shelves so that they are not directly one above the other in the cooking compartment.

Accessories

Only use original accessories supplied with your appliance. These have been tailored to the cooking compartment and the operating modes of your appliance.

Ensure that you always use suitable accessories and that they are placed in the oven the right way around. \rightarrow "Accessories" on page 11

Greaseproof paper

Only use greaseproof paper that is suitable for the selected temperature. Always cut greaseproof paper to size.

Cakes and pastries

Your appliance offers you a range of heating types for the preparation of cakes and small baked items. You can find the ideal settings for many dishes in the settings tables.

Also refer to the notes in the section on allowing dough to rise.

Baking tins

For optimal cooking results, we recommend using darkcoloured metal baking tins.

Tinplate baking tins, ceramic dishes and glass dishes extend baking time and mean that the baked item will not brown evenly.

If you are using silicone moulds, follow the manufacturer's instructions and recipes. Silicone moulds are often smaller than normal baking tins. Quantity and recipe specifications may vary.

Frozen products

Do not use frozen products that are heavily frosted. Remove any ice on the food.

Some frozen products may be unevenly pre-baked. Uneven browning may remain even after baking.

Bread and rolls

Caution!

Never pour water into the hot cooking compartment or place cookware containing water onto the bottom of the cooking compartment. The change in temperature can cause damage to the enamel.

Some food turns out better if it is baked in several stages. These dishes are indicated in the table.

The setting values for bread dough apply to both dough placed on a baking tray and dough placed in a loaf tin.
Baking on one level

Food	Dish	Shelf position	Type of heating	Temperature in °C	Time in minutes
Victoria sandwich	Wire rack + 2 x Ø 20 cm tins	3	&	160-180	20-30
Light fruit cake	Wire rack + high Ø 20 cm tin	2	0	150-160	80-90
Rich fruit cake	Wire rack + \emptyset 23 cm high round tin or 20 cm square tin	2	*	130-140	180-190
Fruit crumble	Wire rack + flat glass dish	3	&*	160-170	40-45
Sponge cake (fatless)	Wire rack + baking tin (dark coated)	2	&*	160-170	30-40
Swiss roll	Universal pan + swiss roll tin	3	* ک	170-180	10-12
Tart	Universal pan + Ø 20 cm plate or pie tin	3	&*	180-190	50-60
Quiche	Wire rack + quiche tin (dark coated)	3	&*	180-190	40-45
(White) Bread	Wire rack + loaf tin (1 x 900 g or 2 x 450 g)	3	®	190-200	35-45
Scones	Universal pan	3	*	180-190	15-20
Biscuits	Universal pan	3	*	160-170	15-20
Small cakes	Wire rack + 12-cup tin	3	* ک	150-160	15-20
Jam tarts	Wire rack + 12-cup tin	2	* ک	180-190	15-20
Meringues	Universal pan	3	*	80-90	100-150
Pavlova	Universal pan	3	**	150** + 100	100-150
Soufflé	Wire rack + 1,2 I soufflé dish	2	&*	160-170	45-50
Pie	Wire rack + pie dish	3	&*	180-190	45-50
Yorkshire pudding	Universal pan + 12-cup tin	3	&*	190-200	15-20
Jacket potatoes	Universal pan	3	*	160-170	60-70
Pizza (homemade)	Universal pan	3	&*	210-220	20-25
* Preheat.					

** Preheat at higher temperature, then reduce and insert food.

Cooking on multiple levels

Food	Dish	Shelf position	Type of heating	Temperature in °C	Time in minutes
Victoria sandwich, 2 levels	2 wire racks + 4 x Ø 20 cm tins	3+1	*	160-170	30-35
Scones, 2 levels	Universal pan + wire rack with baking tray	3+1	*	170-180	20-25
Biscuits, 2 levels	Universal pan + wire rack with baking tray	3+1	*	150-160	20-25
Biscuits, 3 levels	Universal pan + 2 wire racks with baking trays	5+3+1	&*	140-150	25-35
Small cakes, 2 levels	2 wire racks + 2 x 12-cup tins	3+1	*	150-160	25-30
Meringues, 2 levels	Universal pan + wire rack with baking tray	3+1	*	80-90	100-150
Jacket potatoes, 2 levels	2 wire racks	3+1	*	160-170	60-75
(White) Bread, 2 levels	2 wire racks + loaf tins (2 x 900 g or 4 x 450 g)	3+1	*	180-190	35-40
Pizza (homemade), 2 levels	Universal pan + wire rack with baking tray	3+1	*	180-190	40-45
* Preheat.					

Baking tips

You want to find out whether the baked item is completely cooked in the middle.	Push a cocktail stick into the highest point on the baked item. If the cocktail stick comes out clean with no dough residue, the baked item is ready.
The baked item collapses.	Next time, use less liquid. Alternatively, set the temperature 10 °C lower and extend the baking time. Adhere to the specified ingredients and preparation instructions in the recipe.
The baked item has risen in the mid- dle but is lower around the edge.	Only grease the base of the springform cake tin. After baking, loosen the baked item carefully with a knife.
The fruit juice overflows.	Next time, use the universal pan.
Small baked items stick to one another during baking.	There should be a gap of approx. 2 cm around each item. This gives enough space for the baked items to expand well and brown on all sides.
The baked item is too dry.	Set the temperature 10 °C higher and shorten the baking time.
The baked item is too light in colour overall.	If the shelf position and the accessories are correct, then you should increase the temperature if necessary or extend the baking time.
The baked item is too light on top, and too dark underneath.	Bake the cake one level higher in the oven the next time.
The baked item is too dark on top, and too light underneath.	Bake the cake one level lower in the oven the next time. Select a lower temperature and extend the baking time.
The baked item is too dark in a tin or loaf tin.	Place the baking tray in the middle of the accessory, not directly against the back wall.
The baked item is too dark in colour overall.	Select a lower temperature next time and extend the baking time if necessary.
The baked item is unevenly browned.	Select a slightly lower temperature.
	Protruding greaseproof paper can affect the air circulation. Always cut greaseproof paper to size.
	Ensure that the baking tin does not stand directly in front of the openings in the cooking compartment back
	When baking small items, you should use similar sizes and thicknesses wherever possible.
You were baking on several levels. The items on the top baking tray are darker than those on the lower baking tray.	Always select hot air when baking on several levels. Baked items that are placed into the oven on trays or in baking tins at the same time will not necessarily be ready at the same time.
The baked item looks good, but is not cooked properly in the middle.	Use a lower temperature and bake slightly longer; if necessary, add slightly less liquid. For baked items with a moist topping, bake the base first. Sprinkle it with almonds or breadcrumbs and then place the topping on top.
The baked item cannot be turned out of the dish when it is turned upside down.	Allow the baked item to cool down for 5 to 10 minutes after baking. If it still sticks, carefully loosen it around the edges again using a knife. Turn the baked item upside down again and cover it several times with a cold, wet cloth. Next time, grease the baking tin and sprinkle with breadcrumbs.

Poultry, meat and fish

Your appliance offers you a range of heating types for preparing poultry, meat and fish. You can find the ideal settings for certain dishes in the settings tables.

Roasting on the wire rack

Roasting on the wire rack works particularly well for large poultry or for multiple pieces at the same time.

Place the food to be grilled directly onto the wire rack. If you are grilling a single piece, place it in the centre of the wire rack for best results.

The universal pan should also be inserted at position 1. This will catch the meat juices that drip down and keeps the cooking compartment clean.

Add up to ½ litre of water to the universal pan, depending on the size and type of joint. This will catch the liquid that drips down. You can make a sauce from these juices. This will also result in less smoke being produced and keep the cooking compartment clean.

Roasting in cookware

Warning – Risk of injury caused by shattering glass!

Place hot glass cookware on a dry mat after cooking. If the surface is damp or cold, the glass may crack.

Marning – Risk of scalding!

Very hot steam may escape when opening the lid after cooking. Lift the lid at the rear, so that the hot steam can escape away from you.

Only use cookware which is suitable for use in an oven. Glass cookware is best. Check whether the cookware fits in the cooking compartment.

Shiny roasting dishes made from stainless steel or aluminium reflect heat like a mirror and are therefore not particularly suitable. The poultry, meat and fish cooks slower and does not brown so well. Use a higher temperature and/or a longer cooking time.

Observe the manufacturer's instructions for your roasting cookware.

Uncovered cookware

To cook poultry, meat and fish, it is best to use a deep roasting tin. Place the tin onto the wire rack. If you do not have any suitable cookware, use the universal pan.

Covered cookware

When cooking with covered cookware, the cooking compartment remains considerably cleaner. Ensure that the lid fits well and closes properly. Place the cookware onto the wire rack.

Poultry, meat and fish can also become crispy in a covered roasting dish. Simply use a roasting dish with a glass lid and set a higher temperature.

Grilling

Keep the appliance door closed when using the grill. Never grill with the appliance door open.

Place the food to be grilled on the wire rack. In addition, slide the universal pan in at least one shelf position lower, with the slanted edge facing the appliance door. Any dripping fat will be caught.

When grilling, try wherever possible to use pieces of food which are of a similar thickness and weight. This will allow them to brown evenly and remain succulent and juicy. Place the food to be grilled directly onto the wire rack.

Use tongs to turn the pieces of food you are grilling. If you pierce the meat with a fork, the juices will run out and it will become dry.

Do not add salt to the meat until it has been grilled. Salt draws water from the meat.

Notes

- The grill element switches itself on and off repeatedly; this is normal. The grill setting determines how frequently this occurs.
- Smoke may be produced when grilling.
- When you are using the grill, do not insert the baking tray or universal pan into the cooking compartment any higher than shelf position 3. The high temperatures at the top of the cooking compartment can warp accessories, which may damage the cooking compartment when removed.

Meat thermometer

Depending on your appliance's features, you may have a meat thermometer. You can cook accurately using a meat thermometer. Read important notes on using the meat thermometer in the corresponding chapter. There, you can find notes on inserting the meat thermometer, the possible heating types and additional information.

Recommended setting values

The setting values are based on the assumption that unstuffed, chilled, ready-to-roast poultry, meat or fish is placed into a cold cooking compartment.

In the table, you can find specifications for poultry, meat and fish with default values for the weight. If you wish to prepare heavier poultry, meat or fish, always use the lower temperature. If roasting several joints, use the weight of the heaviest piece as a basis for determining the cooking time. The individual pieces should be approximately equal in size. The larger the poultry, meat or fish is, the lower the cooking temperature and the longer the cooking time.

Turn the poultry, meat and fish after approx. $^{1\!\!/_2}$ to $^{2\!\!/_3}$ of the indicated time.

Poultry

When cooking duck or goose, pierce the skin on the underside of the wings. This allows the fat to run out.

If using duck breast, score the skin. Do not turn duck breasts.

Add some liquid to the poultry in the dish. Cover the base of the ovenware with approx. 1-2 cm of liquid.

When you turn poultry, ensure that the breast side or the skin side is underneath at first.

Poultry will turn out particularly crispy and brown if you baste it towards the end of the roasting time with butter, salted water or orange juice.

Meat

Baste lean meat with fat as required or cover it with strips of bacon.

When roasting, add a little liquid if the meat is lean. A covering of approx. $\frac{1}{2}$ cm depth should be applied to the base of any glass cookware.

Score the rind crosswise. If you turn the joint when cooking, ensure that the rind is underneath at first.

When the joint is ready, turn off the oven and allow it to rest for another 10 minutes in the cooking compartment. This allows the meat juices to be better distributed. Wrap the joint in aluminium foil if necessary. The recommended resting time is not included in the cooking time indicated.

It is more convenient to roast and braise meat in cookware. You can take the joint out of the cooking compartment more easily in the cookware, and prepare the sauce in the cookware itself.

The quantity of liquid is dependent on the type of meat, the cookware material and also on whether or not a lid is used. If preparing meat in an enamelled or dark metal roasting dish, it will need a little more liquid than if cooked in glass cookware.

The steam evaporates in the cookware when roasting. Carefully pour in more liquid if required.

The distance between the meat and the lid should be at least 3 cm. The meat may rise.

If necessary, braise the meat first by searing it. Add water, wine, vinegar or a similar liquid to the braising liquid. A covering approx. 1-2 cm deep should be applied to the base of the cookware.

Fish

Fish cooked whole does not have to be turned. Place the whole fish into the cooking compartment in swimming position with the dorsal fin facing upwards. Placing half a potato or a small oven-proof container in the stomach cavity of the fish will provide stability.

You can tell when the fish is cooked because the dorsal fin can be removed easily.

When stewing, add two to three tablespoons of liquid and a little lemon juice or vinegar into the cookware.

Roasting

Food	Dish	Shelf posi- tion	Type of heating	Temperature in °C	Time, min. per 500 g + add. time
Beef					
Slow roast joint	Universal pan with wire insert	1	8	130-140	40 + 40
Top side, top rump	Universal pan with wire insert	1	B	160-170	30 + 25
Lamb					
Leg	Universal pan with wire insert	1	B	160-170	30 + 25
Shoulder (bone in)	Universal pan with wire insert	1	B	160-170	25 + 20
Shoulder (boned and rolled)	Universal pan with wire insert	1	ß	170-180	25 + 25
Rack of lamb	Universal pan with wire insert	1	8	180-190	25 + 25
Pork					
Roast joint	Universal pan with wire insert	1	8	180-190	35 + 35
Loin joint	Universal pan with wire insert	1		170-180	30 + 30
Belly	Universal pan with wire insert	1		200-210	25 + 25
Gammon joint	Universal pan with wire insert	1	B	160-170	30 + 30
Poultry					
Chicken	Universal pan with wire insert	1	8	180-190	20 + 20
Chicken, portion (200-250 g each)	Universal pan with wire insert	1	8	190-200	20 + 25
Chicken, quarter (450 g each)	Universal pan with wire insert	1		180-190	20 + 25
Duck	Universal pan with wire insert	1		180-190	20 + 20
Turkey, crown	Universal pan with wire insert	1	B	160-170	15 + 15
Turkey, whole (4-8 kg)	Universal pan with wire insert	1	ß	160-170	12 + 12
Casserole					
Diced meat (beef, pork, lamb), 500g meat	Wire rack + glass roasting dish with lid	2		140	120-150 (total time)
Braising steaks	Wire rack + glass roasting dish with lid	2	8	140	120-150 (total time)
Diced Chicken, 500g meat	Wire rack + glass roasting dish with lid	2	B	140	60-90
Complete meal					
With beef	Wire rack + universal pan with wire insert	4+1	0	160, then 200 (yorkshire pud- ding)	weight of meat (see table above) + 15-25 for york- shire pudding
With chicken	Wire rack + universal pan with wire insert	4+1	٩	180	weight of chicken (see table above)
Food	Dish	Shelf posi- tion	Type of heating	Temperature in °C	Time, min. per 500 g + add. time
Lamb					
Leg	Universal pan with wire insert	1	Марикана С	150-170	30 + 35
Rack of lamb	Universal pan with wire insert	1		180-200	25 + 25
Pork					
Roast joint	Universal pan with wire insert	1)	180-200	35 + 40
Belly	Cookware, uncovered	1		200-210	25 + 20

Food	Dish	Shelf posi- tion	Type of heating	Temperature in °C	Time, min. per 500 g + add. time
Poultry					
Chicken	Universal pan with wire insert	1	Теор	200-220	25 + 15
Chicken, portion (200-250 g each)	Universal pan with wire insert	3	Тер	210-230	25 + 25
Chicken, quarter (450 g each)	Universal pan with wire insert	2	Тер	220-240	20 + 25
Duck	Universal pan with wire insert	1	Тер	190-210	20 + 20

Grilling

Food	Dish	Shelf posi- tion	Type of heat- ing	Grill setting	Time in minutes
Beef					
Steaks, height 2-3 cm	Wire rack + universal pan	5+3	~~	3	1. side 4-5, 2. side 4-5
Burgers, height 1-2 cm	Wire rack + universal pan	5+3	~	3	1. side 14-16, 2. side 10-12
Lamb					
Steaks, height 2-3 cm	Wire rack + universal pan	5+3	~~	3	1. side 6-7, 2. side 6-7
Chops, height 2-3 cm	Wire rack + universal pan	5+3	~~	3	1. side 5-6, 2. side 5-6
Pork					
Steaks, height 1-2 cm	Wire rack + universal pan	5+3	~~	3	1. side 6-7, 2. side 6-7
Chops, height 2-3 cm	Wire rack + universal pan	4+3	~~	3	1. side 10-12, 2. side 9-10
Burgers, height 1-2 cm	Wire rack + universal pan	5+3	~~	3	1. side 6-8, 2. side 4-6
Sausages, thickness 2-4 cm	Wire rack + universal pan	4+3		3	10-15, turn occa- sionally
Gammon					
Steaks, height 1-3 cm	Wire rack + universal pan	5+3	~	3	1. side 4-5, 2. side 3-4
Chicken					
Drumsticks, 150 g each	Wire rack + universal pan	3+2	~~	3	1. side 20, 2. side 10
Breast (boneless), 150 g each	Wire rack + universal pan	3+2	~~	3	1. side 20, 2. side 10
Fish					
Whole trout, 300 g each	Wire rack + universal pan	2+1	~~	2	20-25
Fillets, 150 g each	Wire rack + universal pan	4+3		3*	1. side 5-7, 2. side 5-7
* Preheat for 3 mins					

Tips on roasting and braising

The cooking compartment becomes very dirty.	Prepare your food in an enclosed roasting dish with higher temperature or use the grill tray. You will achieve the best roasting results if you use the grill tray. The grill tray can be bought later as a special accessory.
The roast is too dark and the crack- ling is burned in places, and/or the roast is too dry.	Check the shelf position and temperature. Select a lower temperature the next time and reduce the roasting time if necessary.
The crackling is too thin.	Increase the temperature or switch on the grill briefly at the end of the roasting time.
The roast looks good but the juices are burnt.	Next time, use a smaller roasting dish and add more liquid if necessary.
The roast looks good but the juices are too clear and watery.	Next time, use a larger roasting dish and add less liquid if necessary.
The meat gets burned during brais- ing.	The roasting dish and lid must fit together well and close properly. Reduce the temperature and add more liquid when braising if necessary.

Preprepared products

Observe the instructions on the packaging.

If you line the accessories with greaseproof paper, make sure that the paper is suitable for these temperatures. Make sure the paper is a suitable size for the dish to be cooked. The cooking result greatly depends on the quality of the food. Pre-browning and unevenness can sometimes even be found on the raw product.

Leave a little space between bread rolls when crisping them up. Do not place too many bread rolls on the accessories.

Sprinkle grated cheese over the top of your lasagne to give it a beautiful and evenly browned finish.

Food	Dish	Shelf position	Type of heating	Temperature in °C	Time in minutes
Pizza, frozen					
Pizza with a thin base	Universal pan	3	&*	200-210	10-15
	Universal pan + wire rack	3+1	&*	170-180	20-25
Pizza with a thick base	Universal pan	3	&*	200-210	15-20
	Universal pan + wire rack	3+1	&*	170-180	20-25
Pizza-Baguette	Universal pan	3	&*	170-180	25-30
Pizza, chilled					
Pizza	Universal pan	3	&*	200-210	10-15
Potato products, frozen					
Chips	Universal pan	3	&*	210-220	20-25
	Universal pan + baking tray	3+1	&*	180-190	30-35
Duchess potatoes	Universal pan	3	&*	200-210	15-20
Hash browns (fried potatoes)	Universal pan	3	&*	200-210	15-20
Potato wedges	Universal pan	3	&*	190-210	20-25
Baked goods, frozen					
Rolls, baguettes	Universal pan	3	&*	180-190	10-15
Baked goods, prebaked					
Part baked white bread	Universal pan	3	&*	180-190	15-20
	Universal pan + wire rack	3+1	&*	160-170	20-25
Fried foods, frozen					
Fish fingers	Universal pan	3	&*	200-210	15-20
Chicken nuggets	Universal pan	3	&*	170-180	20-25
Lasagne, frozen					
Lasagne, 400 g	Wire rack	2	&*	180-190	35-40
Lasagne, 1200 g	Wire rack	2	&*	180-190	40-50
* Preheat.					

Food	Dish	Shelf position	Type of heating	Temperature in °C	Time in minutes
Lasagne, chilled					
Lasagne, 400 g	Wire rack	2	*	170-180	25-30
Lasagne, 1200 g	Wire rack	2	*	170-180	30-35
* Preheat.					

Yoghurt

You can use your appliance to make your own yoghurt.

Remove accessories and shelf supports from the cooking compartment. The cooking compartment must be empty.

1. Heat 1 litre of milk (3.5% fat) to 90 °C on the hob and then leave it to cool down to 40 °C.

It is sufficient to heat UHT milk to 40 °C.

- 2. Stir in 30 g (approx. 1 tbsp) (chilled) yoghurt.
- 3. Pour into cups or small jars with lids and cover.
- 4. Place the cups or jars onto the cooking
- compartment floor and use the settings indicated in the table.
- 5. After making the yoghurt, leave it to cool in the refrigerator.

	ccessories/cookware	Shelf position	Heating function	Tempera- ture in °C	Cooking time
Yoghurt Cu	up/jar	Cooking compart- ment floor	<u>, Ô</u> .	-	4-5h

Acrylamide in foodstuffs

Acrylamide is mainly produced in grain and potato products prepared at high temperatures, such as potato crisps, chips, sliced bread, bread rolls, bread or fine baked goods (biscuits, gingerbread, spiced biscuit).

Tips for keeping acrylamide to a minim	um
General	 Keep cooking times as short as possible. Cook food until it is golden brown, but not too dark. Large, thick pieces of food contain less acrylamide.
Baking	With top/bottom heating at max. 200 °C. With hot air at max. 180 °C.
Biscuits	With top/bottom heating at max. 190 °C. With hot air at max. 170 °C. Egg or egg yolk reduces the production of acrylamide.
Oven chips	Spread out a single layer evenly on the baking tray. Cook approx. 400-600 g at once on a baking tray so that the chips do not dry out and become crunchy.

Drying

You can achieve outstanding drying results with hot air. With this type of preserving, flavours are concentrated as a result of the dehydration.

Only use unblemished, fresh fruit, vegetables and herbs and wash them thoroughly. Line the wire rack with greaseproof paper or parchment paper. Drain the excess water from the fruit and then dry the fruit thoroughly.

If necessary, cut it into pieces of equal size or slice it thinly. Place unpeeled fruit onto the dish with the sliced surfaces facing upwards. Ensure that neither fruit nor mushrooms overlap on the wire rack.

Grate vegetables and then blanch them. Drain the excess water from the blanched vegetables and spread them evenly on the wire rack.

Dry herbs on the stem. Spread the herbs out evenly and slightly heaped on the wire rack.

Use the following shelf positions for drying:

- 1 wire rack: Position 3
- 2 wire racks: Positions 3 + 1

Turn very juicy fruit and vegetables several times. After drying, remove the dried food from the paper immediately.

In the table, you will find settings for drying various foodstuffs. The temperature and drying time are dependent on the type, moisture, ripeness and thickness of the food. The longer you leave the food to be dried, the better it will be preserved. The more thinly you slice the food, the more quickly it will dry and the more flavour it will retain.For this reason, the table specifies setting ranges.

If you wish to dry food that is not listed in the table, you should use the settings listed in the table for similar food as reference.

Fruit, vegetables and herbs	Accessories	Heating function	Temperature in °C	Cooking time in hours
Pomes (apple rings, 3 mm thick, 200 g per wire rack)	1-2 wire racks	8	80	4-8
Root vegetables (carrots), grated, blanched	1-2 wire racks	٨	80	4-7
Sliced mushrooms	1-2 wire racks	٨	80	5-8
Herbs, washed	1-2 wire racks	٨	60	2-5

Prove dough

Your yeast dough will prove considerably more quickly using this heating function than at room temperature and will not dry out. Do not start the appliance if the cooking compartment is not completely cool.

Always allow yeast dough to prove twice.Use the settings indicated in the settings tables for the first and second proving stages (dough fermentation stage and final fermentation stage).

Dough fermentation

Place the dough into a heat-resistant bowl and place this onto the wire rack. Use the settings indicated in the table.

Do not open the appliance door while the dough is proving, otherwise moisture will escape. Do not cover the dough. Condensation builds up during the proving process, which steams up the door panel. Wipe out the cooking compartment after dough proving.Remove any limescale with a little vinegar and wipe with clean water.

Final fermentation

Place your dough into the oven at the shelf position indicated in the table.

If you want to preheat the oven, the final fermentation stage takes place outside the appliance in a warm place.

The temperature and proving time are dependent on the type and quantity of the ingredients. For this reason, the values indicated in the settings table are intended as a guide only.

Dish	Accessories/cookware	Shelf posi- tion	Heating function	Step	Temperature in °C	Cooking time in mins
Yeast dough, light	Bowl	2	:Ô:	1.	-*	25-30
	Universal pan or loaf tin	2	Ċ	2.	-*	10-20
Yeast dough, heavy and rich	Bowl	2	- <u>Ģ</u> .	1.	-*	60-75
	Universal pan or loaf tin	2	<u>.Ģ.</u>	2.	-*	45-60

* Heat up up to 50 °C with 🗔

Defrosting

For defrosting frozen fruit, vegetables and baked items. Poultry, meat and fish should ideally be defrosted in the refrigerator. Not suitable for cream cakes or cream gateaux.

Use the following shelf positions when defrosting:

- 1 wire rack: Position 2
- 2 wire racks: Positions 3 + 1

Tip: Food that has been frozen flat or in portions defrosts more quickly than food items frozen in a block.

Remove frozen food from its packaging and place it onto the wire rack in suitable cookware.

Redistribute the food or turn it once or twice as it defrosts. Large pieces of food should be turned several times.As the food defrosts, break up any clumps and remove items that have already defrosted from the appliance.

To allow the temperature to equalise, leave the defrosted food to rest for another 10 to 30 minutes in the appliance after switching it off.

Frozen food	Accessories	Position	Heating function	Temperature
For example cream gateaux, buttercream cakes, gateaux with chocolate or sugar icing, fruit, chicken, sausage and meat, bread and bread rolls, cakes and other baked items	Wire rack	2	0	The temperature selector must remain in the "Off" position

Test dishes

These tables have been produced for test institutes to facilitate appliance testing.

As per EN 60350-1.

Baking

Items that are placed in the oven on baking trays or in baking tins/dishes at the same time will not necessarily be ready at the same time.

Shelf positions for baking on two levels:

- Universal pan, position 3 Baking tray, position 1
- Baking tins/dishes on the wire rack First wire rack, position 3 Second wire rack, position 1

Shelf positions for baking on three levels:

- Baking tray, position 5
- Universal pan, position 3
- Baking tray: Position 1

Baking with two springform tins:

- On one level (figure 1)
- On two levels (figure 2)



Notes

- The setting values apply to dishes placed into a cold cooking compartment.
- Please note the information in the tables about preheating. The setting values are valid without rapid heating-up.
- For baking, use the lower of the indicated temperatures first.

Baking

Dish	Accessories/cookware	Shelf posi- tion	Heating function	Temperature in °C	Cooking time in min
Viennese whirls	Universal pan	3	0	140-150*	25-35
Viennese whirls, 2 levels	Universal pan + baking tray	3+1	8	140-150*	30-45
Viennese whirls, 3 levels	Baking trays + universal pan	5+3+1	8	130-140*	35-50
Small cakes	Universal pan	3	8	150-170*	20-35
Small cakes, 2 levels	Universal pan + baking tray	3+1	8	140-160*	30-40
Small cakes, 3 levels	Baking trays + universal pan	5+3+1	8	130-150*	35-55
Hot water sponge cake	26 cm springform cake tin	2	8	160-170*	30-40
Hot water sponge cake, 2 levels	26 cm springform cake tin	3+1	8	150-160*	35-50
Double-crusted apple pie	2 x 20 cm black cake tins	3	8	160-180	75-95
Double-crusted apple pie, 2 levels	2 x 20 cm black cake tins	3+1	0	170-190	70-90

^c Preheat; do not use rapid heat-up function

Grilling

Dish	Accessories	Shelf position	Heating function	Temperature in °C	Cooking time in mins
Toasting bread Preheat for 10 min	Wire rack	5	~~	3	0,2-1,5
Beefburgers, x 12 * Do not preheat	Wire rack	4	~~	3	25-30*
* Turn after 2/3 of the total time					



BOSCH

SERVICE

Thank you for buying a Bosch Home Appliance!

Register your new device on MyBosch now and profit directly from:

- Expert tips & tricks for your appliance
- Warranty extension options
- Discounts for accessories & spare-parts
- Digital manual and all appliance data at hand
- Easy access to Bosch Home Appliances Service

Free and easy registration – also on mobile phones:

www.bosch-home.com/welcome

Looking for help? You'll find it here.

Expert advice for your Bosch home appliances, need help with problems or a repair from Bosch experts.

Find out everything about the many ways Bosch can support you:

www.bosch-home.com/service

Contact data of all countries are listed in the attached service directory.

Robert Bosch Hausgeräte GmbH Carl-Wery-Straße 34 81739 München Germany

www.bosch-home.com



Fridge-freezer User Manual







Fridge-freezer

KIV86.. KIV87..

[en] Information for Use

Table of contents

1 Safety41.1 General information41.2 Intended use41.3 Restriction on user group41.4 Safe transport41.5 Safe installation51.6 Safe use61.7 Damaged appliance82 Preventing material damage9	• • • • • • •
3 Environmental protection and	
saving energyg3.1 Disposing of packagingg3.2 Saving energyg)
4 Installation and connection 9)
4.1 Scope of delivery)
location)
4.3 Installing the appliance)
the first time)
4.5 Connecting the appliance to the electricity supply11	I
5 Familiarising yourself with	
your appliance	2
5.2 Control panel	3
6 Features	3
6.1 Shelf	3
6.2 Fruit and vegetable con- tainer	3
6.3 Door rack14	ļ
6.4 Accessories14	ł
7 Basic operation 14 7 1 Switching on the appliance 14	1
7.2 Operating tips	ļ
7.3 Switching off the appliance 14 7.4 Setting the temperature 14	1 1
J	

15
15 15
15
15
16 16
16
17
17
17
18
8
18
19
19
19
20 20
22 24
24

15 Storage and disposal 24

15.1	Taking the appliance out of	
	operation	24
15.2	Disposing of old appliance	24

16 Customer Service..... 25

16.1 Product number (E-Nr.) and production number (FD)....... 25

17 Technical data 25

1 Safety

Observe the following safety instructions.

1.1 General information

- Read this instruction manual carefully.
- Keep the instruction manual and the product information safe for future reference or for the next owner.
- Do not connect the appliance if it has been damaged in transit.

1.2 Intended use

This appliance is only intended to be fully fitted in a kitchen. Only use this appliance:

- for chilling and freezing food and for making ice cubes.
- In private households and in enclosed spaces in a domestic environment.
- Up to an altitude of 2000 m above sea level.

1.3 Restriction on user group

This appliance may be used by children aged 8 or over and by people who have reduced physical, sensory or mental abilities or inadequate experience and/or knowledge, provided that they are supervised or have been instructed on how to use the appliance safely and have understood the resulting dangers.

Do not let children play with the appliance.

Cleaning and user maintenance must not be performed by children unless they are being supervised.

Children above the age of three years old and younger than eight years old may load and unload the the fridge-freezer.

1.4 Safe transport

▲ WARNING – Risk of injury!

The high weight of the appliance may result in injury when lifted.

► Do not lift the appliance on your own.

1.5 Safe installation

▲ WARNING – Risk of electric shock!

Incorrect installation is dangerous.

- Connect and operate the appliance only in accordance with the specifications on the rating plate.
- Connect the appliance to a power supply with alternating current only via a properly installed socket with earthing.
- The protective conductor system of the domestic electrical installation must be properly installed.
- Never equip the appliance with an external switching device, e.g. a timer or remote control.
- When the appliance is installed, the mains plug of the power cord must be freely accessible. If free access is not possible, an all-pole isolating switch must be installed in the permanent electrical installation according to the installation regulations.
- When installing the appliance, check that the power cable is not trapped or damaged.
- If the insulation of the power cord is damaged, this is dangerous.
- ► Never let the power cord come into contact with heat sources.

▲ WARNING – Risk of explosion!

If the appliance's ventilation openings are sealed, a leak in the refrigeration circuit may result in a flammable mixture of gas and air.

Keep ventilation openings, in the appliance enclosure or in the built-in structure, clear of obstruction.

▲ WARNING – Risk of fire!

It is dangerous to use an extended power cord and non-approved adapters.

- ► Do not use extension cables or multiple socket strips.
- Only use adapters and power cords approved by the manufacturer.
- If the power cord is too short and a longer one is not available, please contact an electrician to have the domestic installation adapted.

```
en Safety
```

Portable multiple socket strips or portable power supply units may overheat and cause a fire.

Do not place portable multiple socket strips or power supply units on the back of the appliance.

1.6 Safe use

▲ WARNING – Risk of electric shock!

An ingress of moisture can cause an electric shock.

- Only use the appliance in enclosed spaces.
- ► Never expose the appliance to intense heat or humidity.
- Do not use steam- or high-pressure cleaners to clean the appliance.

▲ WARNING – Risk of suffocation!

Children may put packaging material over their heads or wrap themselves up in it and suffocate.

- ► Keep packaging material away from children.
- ► Do not let children play with packaging material.

Children may breathe in or swallow small parts, causing them to suffocate.

- ► Keep small parts away from children.
- ► Do not let children play with small parts.

▲ WARNING – Risk of explosion!

If the cooling circuit is damaged, flammable refrigerant may escape and explode.

- To accelerate the defrosting process, do not use any other mechanical devices or means other than those recommended by the manufacturer.
- If food is stuck to the freezer compartment, loosen it with a blunt implement such as the handle of a wooden spoon.

Products which contain flammable propellants and explosive substances may explode, e.g. spray cans.

Do not store products which contain flammable propellants (e.g. spray cans) or explosive substances in the appliance.

▲ WARNING – Risk of fire!

Electrical devices within the appliance may cause a fire, e.g. heaters or electric ice makers.

► Do not operate electrical devices within the appliance.

▲ WARNING – Risk of injury!

Containers that contain carbonated drinks may burst.

Do not store containers that contain carbonated drinks in the freezer compartment.

Injury to the eyes caused by escaping flammable refrigerant and hazardous gases.

Do not damage the tubes of the refrigerant circuit or the insulation.

▲ WARNING – Risk of cold burns!

Contact with frozen food and cold surfaces may cause burns by refrigeration.

- Never put frozen food straight from the freezer compartment into your mouth.
- Avoid prolonged contact of the skin with frozen food, ice and surfaces in the freezer compartment.

▲ CAUTION – Risk of harm to health!

To prevent food from being contaminated, you must observe the following instructions.

- If the door is open for an extended period of time, this may lead to a considerable temperature increase in the compartments of the appliance.
- Regularly clean the surfaces that may come into contact with food and accessible drain systems.
- Store raw meat and fish in suitable containers in the refrigerator so that they do not touch or drip on other food.
- If the fridge/freezer is empty for an extended period of time, switch off the appliance, defrost it, clean it and leave the door open to prevent the formation of mould.

Metal or metal-style parts in the appliance may contain aluminium. If acidic food comes into contact with aluminium in the appliance, aluminium foil ions may pass into the food.

► Do not consume soiled food.

1.7 Damaged appliance

▲ WARNING – Risk of electric shock!

If the appliance or the power cord is damaged, this is dangerous.

- ► Never operate a damaged appliance.
- Never pull on the power cord to unplug the appliance. Always unplug the appliance at the mains.
- If the appliance or the power cord is damaged, immediately unplug the power cord or switch off the fuse in the fuse box.
- ► Call customer services. → Page 25 Incorrect repairs are dangerous.
- Repairs to the appliance should only be carried out by trained specialist staff.
- ► Only use genuine spare parts when repairing the appliance.
- If the power cord of this appliance is damaged, it must be replaced with a special connection cable, which is available from the manufacturer or his Customer Service.

WARNING – Risk of fire!



If the tubes are damaged, flammable refrigerant and harmful gases may escape and ignite.

- Keep naked flames and ignition sources away from the appliance.
- Ventilate the room.
- Switch off the appliance. \rightarrow Page 14
- Unplug the appliance from the mains or switch off the circuit breaker in the fuse box.
- ► Call after-sales service. → Page 25

2 Preventing material damage

ATTENTION!

Using the base, runners or appliance doors as a seat surface or climbing surface may damage the appliance.

- Do not stand or support yourself on the base, runners or doors.
 Contamination with oil or fat may cause plastic parts and door seals to become porous.
- Keep plastic parts and door seals free of oil and grease.

Metal or metal-style parts in the appliance may contain aluminium. Aluminium reacts when it comes into contact with acidic foods.

 Do not store unpackaged food in the appliance.

3 Environmental protection and saving energy

3.1 Disposing of packaging

The packaging materials are environmentally compatible and can be recycled.

 Sort the individual components by type and dispose of them separately.

3.2 Saving energy

If you follow these instructions, your appliance will use less power.

Selecting the installation location

- Keep the appliance out of direct sunlight.
- Install the appliance as far away as possible from heating elements, cookers and other heat sources:

- Maintain a 30 mm clearance to electric or gas cookers.
- Maintain a 300 mm clearance to oil or solid-fuel cookers.
- Never cover or block the external ventilation openings.

Saving energy during use

Note: The arrangement of the fittings does not affect the energy consumption of the appliance.

- Open the appliance only briefly and then close it carefully.
- Never cover or block the interior ventilation openings or the exterior ventilation openings.
- Transport purchased food in a cool bag and place in the appliance quickly.
- Allow warm food and drinks to cool down before storing them.
- Thaw frozen food in the refrigerator compartment to utilise the low temperature of the food.
- Always leave some space between the food and to the back panel.
- Defrost the freezer compartment regularly.

4 Installation and connection

4.1 Scope of delivery

After unpacking all parts, check for any transport damage and for completeness of delivery.

If you have any complaints, contact your dealer or our after-sales service \rightarrow Page 25.

The delivery consists of the following:

- Built-in appliance
- Equipment and accessories¹
- Installation material
- Installation instructions
- User manual
- Customer service directory
- Warranty enclosure²
- Energy label
- Information on energy consumption and noises

4.2 Criteria for the installation location

A WARNING Risk of explosion!

If the appliance is in a space that is too small, a leak in the refrigeration circuit may result in a flammable mixture of gas and air.

Only install the appliance in a space with a volume of at least 1 m³ per 8 g refrigerant. The volume of refrigerant is indicated on the rating plate. → "Appliance", Fig. 1 (2) page 12

Fig. **1**/**3**, Page 12

The weight of the appliance ex works may be up to 65 kg depending on the model.

The subfloor must be sufficiently stable to bear the weight of the appliance.

Permitted room temperature

The permitted room temperature depends on the appliance's climate class.

The climate class can be found on the rating plate. \rightarrow "Appliance", Fig.

1/3, Page 12

Climate class	Permitted room tem- perature
SN	10 °C to 32 °C
Ν	16 °C to 32 °C
ST	16 °C to 38 °C
Т	16 °C to 43 °C

The appliance is fully functional within the permitted room temperature. If an appliance with climate class SN is operated at colder room temperatures, the appliance will not be damaged up to a room temperature of 5 °C.

Over-and-under and side-by-side installation

If you want to install 2 refrigerating appliances one over the other or side by side, you must maintain a clearance of at least 150 mm between the appliances. Selected appliances can be installed without a minimum clearance. Ask your dealer or kitchen planner about this.

4.3 Installing the appliance

 Install the appliance in accordance with the enclosed installation instructions.

4.4 Preparing the appliance for the first time

- 1. Remove the informative material.
- 2. Remove the protective foil and transit bolts, e.g. remove the adhesive strips and carton.
- Clean the appliance for the first time. → Page 19

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

² Not in all countries

4.5 Connecting the appliance to the electricity supply

- 1. Insert the non-heating appliance plug of the power cable into the appliance.
- Insert the mains plug of the appliance's power cable in a socket nearby.

The connection data of the appliance can be found on the rating plate. \rightarrow "Appliance", Fig. **1**/**3**, Page 12

- **3.** Check the mains plug is inserted properly.
- The appliance is now ready for use.

5 Familiarising yourself with your appliance

5.1 Appliance

You can find an overview of the parts of your appliance here.



A	Refrigerator compartment $\rightarrow Pago 15$	1	Control panel → Page 13
В	Freezer compartment $\rightarrow Page 16$	2	Fruit and vegetable container \rightarrow Page 13
	→ Page To		Rating plate \rightarrow Page 25

4	Frozen food container → Page 20
5	Door storage compartment for large bottles \rightarrow Page 14

Note: Deviations between your appliance and the diagrams may differ with regard to their features and size.

5.2 Control panel

You can use the control panel to configure all functions of your appliance and to obtain information about the operating status.



2

- 1 > sets the temperature of the refrigerator compartment.
- 2 super lights up when the Super function is switched on.
- 3 Displays the set temperature for the refrigerator compartment in °C.

6 Features

The features of your appliance depend on the model.

6.1 Shelf

To vary the shelf as required, you can remove the shelf and re-insert it elsewhere.

→ "Removing the shelf", Page 20

6.2 Fruit and vegetable container

Store fresh fruit and vegetables in their packaging in the fruit and vegetable container.

Cover any chopped fruit and vegetables, or store in air-tight packaging. Condensation may form in the fruit and vegetable container depending on the food and quantity stored. Remove the condensation with a dry cloth.

To ensure that the quality and aroma are retained, store fruit and vegetables that are sensitive to cold outside of the appliance at temperatures of approx. 8 °C to 12 °C, e.g. pineapple, bananas, citrus fruits, cucumbers, courgettes, peppers, tomatoes and potatoes.

6.3 Door rack

To adjust the door rack as required, you can remove the door rack and re-insert elsewhere.

→ "Removing door rack", Page 20

6.4 Accessories

Use original accessories. These have been made especially for your appliance.

The accessories for your appliance depend on the model.

Egg tray

Store eggs safely on the egg tray.

Ice cube tray

Use the ice cube tray to make ice cubes.

Making ice cubes

Use only drinking water to make ice cubes.

 Fill the ice cube tray with drinking water up to ³/₄ and place in the freezer compartment.

If the ice cube tray is stuck to the freezer compartment, loosen it with a blunt implement only (e.g. spoon handle).

2. To loosen the ice cubes, twist the ice cube tray slightly or hold it briefly under flowing water.

7 Basic operation

7.1 Switching on the appliance

1. Press ^{3 sec.} ①.

Note: If the appliance has been previously switched off using the control panel, press and hold ^{3 sec.} ① for three seconds.

- The appliance begins to cool.
- 2. Set the required temperature. → Page 14

7.2 Operating tips

- Once you have switched on the appliance, the set temperature is only reached after several hours. Do not put any food in the appliance until the set temperature has been reached.
- The housing around the freezer compartment is temporarily heated slightly. This prevents condensation in the area of the door seal.
- When you close the door, a vacuum may be created. The door is then difficult to open again. Wait a moment until the vacuum is offset.

7.3 Switching off the appliance

► Press ^{3 sec.} ①.

7.4 Setting the temperature

Setting the refrigerator compartment temperature

 Press > repeatedly until the temperature display shows the required temperature. The recommended temperature in the refrigerator compartment is 4 °C. → ""OK" sticker". Page 16

Setting the freezer compartment temperature

 In order to set the freezer compartment temperature, change the refrigerator compartment temperature → Page 14.

The refrigerator compartment temperature influences freezer compartment temperature. Refrigerator compartment temperatures that are set to warm generate warmer freezer compartment temperatures.

8 Additional functions

8.1 Super function

With the Super function, the refrigerator compartment and the freezer compartment cool more intensively. Switch on the Super function 4 to 6 hours before placing food weighing 2 kg or more.

In order to utilise the freezing capacity, use the Super function.

→ "Freezing capacity", Page 16

Note: When the Super function is switched on, increased noise may occur.

Switching on Super function

 Press > repeatedly until super lights up.

Note: After approx. 48 hours, the appliance switches to normal operation.

Switching off Super function

Press >.

9 Alarm

9.1 Door alarm

If the appliance door is open for a while, the door alarm switches on. A warning tone sounds and the temperature displays flash.

After 10 minutes, the interior lighting flashes.

Switching off the door alarm

- Close the appliance door or press
 >.
- ✓ The warning tone is switched off.

10 Refrigerator compartment

You can keep meat, sausage, fish, dairy products, eggs, prepared meals and pastries in the refrigerator compartment.

The temperature can be set from 2 °C to 8 °C.

The refrigerator compartment can also be used to store highly perishable foods in the short to medium term. The lower the selected temperature, the longer the food remains fresh.

10.1 Tips for storing food in the refrigerator compartment

- Only store food when fresh and undamaged.
- Store food covered or in air-tight packaging.
- To avoid impeding the circulation of air and to prevent food from freezing, do not place food so that it has direct contact with the back wall.

- Allow hot food and drinks to cool down first before placing in the appliance.
- Observe the best-before date or use-by date specified by the manufacturer.

10.2 Chill zones in the refrigerator compartment

The air circulation in the refrigerator compartment creates different chill zones.

Coldest zone

The coldest zone is between the arrow stamped on the side and the shelf underneath.

Tip: Store highly perishable food such as fish, sausages and meat in the coldest zone.

Warmest zone

The warmest zone is at the very top of the door.

Tip: Store food that does not spoil easily in the warmest zone, e.g. hard cheese and butter. Cheese can then continue to release its aroma and the butter will still be easy to spread.

10.3 "OK" sticker

The "OK" sticker lets you check whether the refrigerator compartment reaches the safe temperature ranges of +4 $^{\circ}$ C or colder recommended for food.

The "OK" sticker is not included with all models.

If the sticker does not indicate "OK", gradually reduce the temperature.

→ "Setting the refrigerator compartment temperature", Page 14

Once the appliance is switched on, it may take up to 12 hours until the set temperature is reached.



11 Freezer compartment

You can store frozen food, freeze food and make ice cubes in the freezer compartment.

The temperature in the freezer compartment depends on the temperature in the refrigerator compartment. Long-term storage of food should be at -18 °C or lower.

The freezer compartment can be used to store perishable food longterm. The low temperatures slow down or stop the spoilage.

11.1 Freezing capacity

The freezing capacity indicates the quantity of food that can be frozen right through to the centre within a specific period of time. Information on freezing capacity can be found on the rating plate. \rightarrow "Appliance", Fig. **1**/**3**, Page 12

Prerequisites for freezing capacity

- Approx. 24 hours before placing fresh food in the appliance, switch on Super function.
 → "Switching on Super function", Page 15
- 2. Place food in the top frozen food container first.

11.2 Fully utilising the freezer compartment volume

Learn how to store the maximum amount of frozen food in the freezer compartment.

 Remove all fittings from the freezer compartment. → Page 20 2. Store food directly on the shelves and on the floor of the freezer compartment.

11.3 Tips for storing food in the freezer compartment

- Store food in air-tight packaging.
- Do not bring food which is to be frozen into contact with frozen food.
- Place the food over the whole area of the frozen food containers.
- To quickly and gently freeze larger quantities of fresh food, place this in the lower frozen food container.
- To ensure that the air can circulate freely in the appliance, push the frozen food containers in as far as they will go.

11.4 Tips for freezing fresh food

- Freeze fresh and undamaged food only.
- Freeze food in portions.
- Cooked food is more suitable than food that can be eaten raw.
- Vegetables: Wash, chop up and blanch before freezing.
- Fruit: Wash, pit and perhaps peel, possibly add sugar or ascorbic acid solution.
- Food that is suitable for freezing includes baked items, fish and seafood, meat, game, poultry, eggs without shells, cheese, butter and quark, ready meals and leftovers.
- Food that is unsuitable for freezing includes lettuce, radishes, eggs in shells, grapes, raw apples and pears, yoghurt, sour cream, crème fraîche and mayonnaise.

Packing frozen food

If you select suitable packaging material and the correct type of packaging, you can determine the product quality and prevent freezer burn.

- **1.** Place the food in the packaging.
- **2.** Squeeze out the air.
- Pack food airtight to prevent it from losing flavour and drying out.
- 4. Label the packaging with the contents and the date of freezing.

11.5 Shelf life of frozen food at -18 °C

Food	Storage time
Fish, sausages, pre- pared meals and baked goods	up to 6 months
Poultry, meat	up to 8 months
Vegetables, fruit	up to 12 months

The imprinted freezer calendar indicates the maximum storage duration in months at a constant temperature of -18 °C.

11.6 Defrosting methods for frozen food

CAUTION Risk of harm to health!

During the thawing process, bacteria may multiply and spoil the frozen food.

- Do not refreeze food after it has been defrosted or started to defrost.
- Refreeze food only after cooking.
- These items should no longer be stored for the maximum storage period.

- Defrost animal-based food, such as fish, meat, cheese, quark, in the refrigerator compartment.
- Defrost bread at room temperature.
- Prepare food for immediate consumption in the microwave, in the oven or on the hob.

12 Defrosting

12.1 Defrosting in the refrigerator compartment

When the appliance is operating, condensation droplets or frost form on the rear panel of the refrigerator compartment due to functional reasons. The back panel in the refrigerator compartment defrosts automatically.



Condensation runs through the condensation channel into the drainage hole to the evaporation pan and does not have to be wiped away.

To ensure that the condensation can drain and odours do not form, observe the following information: \rightarrow "Cleaning the condensation chan-

nel and drainage hole", Page 20.

12.2 Defrosting in the freezer compartment

The freezer compartment does not defrost automatically. A layer of hoarfrost in the freezer compartment impairs refrigeration of the frozen food and increases power consumption.

Defrosting the freezer compartment

Regularly defrost the freezer compartment.

 Switch on the Super function approx. four hours before defrosting.
 → "Switching on Super function", Page 15

This means that the food reaches very low temperatures and it can be stored for longer at room temperature.

- 2 Remove the frozen food container with the frozen food and temporarily place it in a cool location. Place ice packs (if available) on the frozen food.
- **3.** Switch off the appliance. \rightarrow Page 14
- 4. Disconnect the appliance from the power supply.

Unplug the appliance from the mains or switch off the circuit breaker in the fuse box.

- To accelerate the defrosting process, place a pan of hot water on a trivet in the freezer compartment.
- 6. Wipe up the condensation water with a soft cloth or sponge.
- 7. Rub the freezer compartment dry with a soft, dry cloth.
- 8. Electrically connect the appliance.
 → Page 11
- **9.** Switch on the appliance. \rightarrow Page 14
- **10.** Reinsert the frozen food containers with the frozen food.

13 Cleaning and servicing

To keep your appliance working efficiently for a long time, it is important to clean and maintain it carefully. Customer Service must clean inaccessible points. Cleaning by customer service can give rise to costs.

13.1 Preparing the appliance for cleaning

- **1.** Switch off the appliance. \rightarrow Page 14
- 2. Disconnect the appliance from the power supply.

Unplug the appliance from the mains or switch off the circuit breaker in the fuse box.

3. Take out all of the food and store it in a cool place.

Place ice packs (if available) onto the food.

- **4.** If there is a layer of hoarfrost, allow this to defrost.
- Remove all fittings and accessories from the appliance.
 → Page 20

13.2 Cleaning the appliance

MARNING Risk of electric shock!

An ingress of moisture can cause an electric shock.

 Do not use steam- or high-pressure cleaners to clean the appliance.

Liquid in the lighting or in the controls can be dangerous.

 The rinsing water must not drip into the lighting or controls.

ATTENTION!

Unsuitable cleaning products may damage the surfaces of the appliance.

- Do not use hard scouring pads or cleaning sponges.
- Do not use harsh or abrasive detergents.
- Do not use cleaning products with a high alcohol content.

If liquid gets into the drainage hole, the evaporation pan may overflow.

 The rinsing water must not get into the drainage hole.

If you clean fittings and accessories in the dishwasher, this may cause them to become deformed or discolour.

- Never clean fittings and accessory in the dishwasher.
- **1.** Prepare the appliance for cleaning. \rightarrow Page 19
- 2 Clean the appliance, the fittings, the accessories and the door seals with a dish cloth, lukewarm water and a little pH-neutral washing-up liquid.
- **3.** Dry thoroughly with a soft, dry cloth.
- 4. Insert the fittings.
- Electrically connect the appliance.
 → Page 11
- **6.** Switch on the appliance. \rightarrow Page 14
- 7. Putting the food into the appliance.

13.3 Cleaning the condensation channel and drainage hole

Regularly clean the condensation channel and drainage hole to ensure that the condensation can drain.

 Carefully clean the condensation channel and the drainage hole, e.g. using a cotton bud.



13.4 Removing the fittings

If you want to clean the fittings thoroughly, remove these from your appliance.

Removing the shelf

• Lift the shelf at the front ①, pull it out and remove it ②.



Removing door rack

• Lift the door rack and remove it.



Removing the fruit and vegetable container

- 1. Pull out the fruit and vegetable container as far as it will go.
- Lift the fruit and vegetable container at the front ① and remove it ②.



Removing the frozen food container

1. Take out the frozen food container as far as it will go.

2. Lift the frozen food container at the front ① and remove it ②.



14 Troubleshooting

You can rectify minor faults on your appliance yourself. Read the troubleshooting information before contacting after-sales service. This will avoid unnecessary costs.

Risk of electric shock!

Incorrect repairs are dangerous.

- Repairs to the appliance should only be carried out by trained specialist staff.
- Only use genuine spare parts when repairing the appliance.
- If the power cord of this appliance is damaged, it must be replaced with a special connection cable, which is available from the manufacturer or his Customer Service.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
The appliance is not cooling, the displays and lighting are lit.	 Showroom mode is switched on. Carry out the appliance self-test. → Page 24 Once the appliance self-test has ended, the appliance switches to normal operation.
The LED lighting does not work.	 Different causes are possible. Call customer service. The customer service number can be found in the enclosed customer service directory.
The temperature dif- fers greatly from the setting.	 Different causes are possible. 1. Switch off the appliance. → Page 14 2. Switch the appliance back on after five minutes. → Page 14 If the temperature is too warm, check the temperature again after a couple of hours. If the temperature is too cold, check the temperature again on the following day.
The base of the refri- gerator compartment is wet.	 The condensation channel or drainage hole are blocked. Clean the condensation channel and the drainage hole. → Page 20
The appliance hums, bubbles, buzzes, gargles or clicks.	Not a fault. A motor is running, e.g. refrigerating unit, fan. Refrigerant flows through the pipes. The motor, switches or solenoid valves are switching on or off. No action required.
The appliance makes noises.	Fittings wobble or stick.Check the removable fittings and, if required, replace these.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
The appliance makes noises.	 Bottles or containers are touching. Move the bottles or containers away from each other.
	Super function is switched on. No action required.

14.1 Power failure

During a power failure, the temperature in the appliance rises; this reduces the storage time and the quality of the frozen food.

On the website for your appliance, the technical data provides you with the storage times for frozen food in the event of a fault.

Notes

- Open the appliance as little as possible during a power failure and do not place any other food in the appliance.
- Check the quality of the food immediately after a power failure.
 - Dispose of any frozen food that has defrosted and is hotter than 5 °C.
 - Cook or fry slightly thawed frozen food, and then either consume it or freeze it again.

14.2 Conducting an appliance self-test

Your appliance has an appliance selftest which displays faults that can be eliminated by your customer service.

- **1.** Switch off the appliance. \rightarrow Page 14
- 2. Switch the appliance back on after approx. five minutes. → Page 14
- Within the first 10 seconds after connecting to the power supply, press and hold > for five to seven seconds until a second audible signal sounds.
- ✓ The appliance self-test starts.
- While the appliance self-test is running, a long audible signal sounds.
- If two audible signals sound and super flashes twice at the end of the appliance self-test then your appliance is in working order. The appliance switches to normal operation.

 If, at the end of the appliance selftest, 5 audible signals sound and super flashes for 10 seconds, inform customer service.

15 Storage and disposal

15.1 Taking the appliance out of operation

- **1.** Switch off the appliance. \rightarrow Page 14
- 2 Disconnect the appliance from the power supply.

Unplug the appliance from the mains or switch off the circuit breaker in the fuse box.

- 3. Remove all of the food.
- **4.** Defrost the appliance. \rightarrow Page 18
- **5.** Clean the appliance. \rightarrow Page 19
- 6. To guarantee the ventilation inside the appliance, leave the appliance open.

15.2 Disposing of old appliance

Valuable raw materials can be reused by recycling.

MARNING Risk of harm to health!

Children can lock themselves in the appliance, thereby putting their lives at risk.

- Leave shelves and containers inside the appliance to prevent children from climbing in.
- Keep children away from the redundant appliance.

MARNING Risk of fire!

If the tubes are damaged, flammable refrigerant and harmful gases may escape and ignite.

- Do not damage the tubes of the refrigerant circuit or the insulation.
- 1. Unplug the appliance from the mains.
- 2. Cut through the power cord.
- **3.** Dispose of the appliance in an environmentally friendly manner.

Information about current disposal methods are available from your specialist dealer or local authority.



This appliance is labelled in accordance with European Directive 2012/19/EU concerning used electrical and electronic appliances (waste electrical and electronic equipment - WEEE). The guideline determines the framework for the return and recycling of used appliances as applicable throughout the EU.

16 Customer Service

Function-relevant genuine spare parts according to the corresponding Ecodesign Order can be obtained from Customer Service for a period of at least 10 years from the date on which your appliance was placed on the market within the European Economic Area.

Note: Under the terms of the manufacturer's warranty applicable to the location, the use of Customer Service is free of charge. The minimum dura-

tion of the warranty (manufacturer's warranty for private consumers) in the European Economic Area is 2 years according to the terms of warranty applicable to the location. The terms of warranty do not affect other rights or claims held by yourself under local legislation.

Detailed information on the warranty period and terms of warranty in your country is available from our aftersales service, your retailer or on our website.

If you contact Customer Service, you will require the product number (E-Nr.) and the production number (FD) of your appliance.

The contact details for Customer Service can be found in the enclosed Customer Service directory or on our website.

16.1 Product number (E-Nr.) and production number (FD)

You can find the product number (E-Nr.) and the production number (FD) on the appliance's rating plate. \rightarrow "Appliance", Fig. 1/3, Page 12 Make a note of your appliance's details and the Customer Service telephone number to find them again quickly.

17 Technical data

Refrigerant, cubic capacity and further technical specifications can be found on the rating plate.

→ "Appliance", Fig. 1/3, Page 12 This product contains a light source from energy efficiency class E. The light source is available as a spare part and should only be replaced by trained specialist staff.
You can find more information about your model online at https://eprel.ec.europa.eu/¹. This web address is linked to the official EU EPREL product database. Please then follow the instructions on searching for the model. The model identifier is made up of the characters before the slash in the product number (E-Nr.) on the rating plate. Alternatively, you can also find the model identifier in the first line of the EU energy label.

¹ Only applies to countries in the European Economic Area





Thank you for buying a Bosch Home Appliance!

Register your new device on MyBosch now and profit directly from:

- Expert tips & tricks for your appliance
- Warranty extension options
- Discounts for accessories & spare-parts
- Digital manual and all appliance data at hand
- Easy access to Bosch Home Appliances Service

Free and easy registration – also on mobile phones: **www.bosch-home.com/welcome**

BOSCH HOME APPLIANCES SERVICE

Looking for help? You'll find it here.

Expert advice for your Bosch home appliances, help with problems or a repair from Bosch experts.

Find out everything about the many ways Bosch can support you: **www.bosch-home.com/service**

Contact data of all countries are listed in the attached service directory.

BSH Hausgeräte GmbH

Carl-Wery-Straße 34 81739 München, GERMANY www.bosch-home.com

A Bosch Company



Valid within Great Britain: Imported to Great Britain by BSH Home Appliances Ltd. Grand Union House Old Wolverton Road Wolverton, Milton Keynes MK12 5PT United Kingdom

Dishwasher User Manual (45cm)



Register your new device on MyBosch now and get free benefits: bosch-home.com/ welcome



Dishwasher

SRV2HKX39G

[en] User manual

Table of contents

Safety	4
General information	4
Intended use	4
Restriction on user group	4
Safe installation	4
Sale use	6
Risk to children	/ Q
RISK to children	0
Preventing material damage	10
Safe installation	. 10
Safe use	10
Environmental protection and	
saving energy	. 11
Disposing of packaging	. 11
Saving energy	. 11
AquaSensor	. 11
Installation and connection	. 11
Scope of supply	. 11
Installing and connecting the ap-	4 4
Drainage connection	10
Drinking water connection	12
Electrical connection	12

Familiarising yourself with

your appliance	14
Appliance	14
Controls	15
Programmes	17

riogrammes	,	
Information for	or test institutes	18

Additional functions 18

Features	19
Top basket	19
Bottom basket	20
Cutlery basket	20
Etagere	20
Folding prongs	21
Knife shelf	21

Baking sheet spray head Basket heights	21 22
Before using for the first time	22
Performing the initial configura- tion	22
Water softening system Overview of water hardness set-	23
tings	23
Setting the water softening sys- tem Special salt Switching off the water softening	23 24
system	24
Regeneration of the water softening system	25
Rinse aid system	25
Rinse aid	25
Switching the rinse aid system off	26
Detergent	26
Suitable detergents	26
Information on detergents Adding detergent	28 28 28
Tableware	29
Damage to glass and tableware Arrange tableware Removing tableware	29 30 31
Basic operation	31
Opening appliance door Switching on the appliance Setting a programme Setting additional functions	31 31 31 31

Setting timer programming ¹ Starting the programme Interrupting programme Terminate programme Switching off appliance	31 32 32 32 32
Basic settings Overview of basic settings	33 33
Cleaning and servicing Cleaning the tub Cleaning products Tips on appliance care Machine Care ^{Machine} Filter system Cleaning spray arms	34 34 34 35 36 37
Troubleshooting Error code / Fault display / Sig- nal Washing results Information on display panel Malfunctions Mechanical damage Noise Clean wastewater pump	38 39 46 46 47 47 49
Transportation, storage and disposal Removing the appliance Protect appliance from frost Transporting the appliance Disposing of old appliance	49 49 50 50 50
Customer Service Product number (E-Nr.), produc- tion number (FD) and consecut- ive numbering (Z-Nr.) AQUA-STOP guarantee	50 51 51
Technical specifications Information regarding Free and Open Source Software	51 52

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

Safety

Observe the following safety instructions.

General information

- Read this instruction manual carefully.
- Keep the instruction manual and the product information safe for future reference or for the next owner.
- Do not connect the appliance if it has been damaged in transit.

Intended use

Only use this appliance:

- For cleaning household tableware.
- In private households and in enclosed spaces in a domestic environment.
- Up to an altitude of 4000 m above sea level.

Restriction on user group

This appliance may be used by children aged 8 or over and by people who have reduced physical, sensory or mental abilities or inadequate experience and/or knowledge, provided that they are supervised or have been instructed on how to use the appliance safely and have understood the resulting dangers.

Children must not play with the appliance.

Cleaning and user maintenance must not be performed by children unless they are being supervised.

Keep children under the age of 8 years away from the appliance and power cable.

Safe installation



▲ WARNING – Risk of injury!

Improper installation may cause injury.

▶ When installing and connecting the appliance, follow the instructions in the manual and installation instructions.

▲ WARNING – Risk of electric shock!

- Incorrect installation is dangerous.
 - Connect and operate the appliance only in accordance with the specifications on the rating plate.
 - ► Always use the supplied power cable for the new appliance.
 - Connect the appliance to a power supply with alternating current only via a properly installed socket with earthing.
 - The protective conductor system of the domestic electrical installation must be properly installed.
 - Never equip the appliance with an external switching device, e.g. a timer or remote control.
 - When the appliance is installed, the mains plug of the power cord must be freely accessible. If free access is not possible, an all-pole isolating switch must be installed in the permanent electrical installation according to the installation regulations.
 - When installing the appliance, check that the power cable is not trapped or damaged.
- Cutting through the supply hose or immersing the Aqua-Stop valve in water is dangerous.
 - Never immerse the plastic housing in water. The plastic housing on the supply hose contains an electric valve.
 - Never cut through the supply hose. The supply hose contains electric power cables.

▲ WARNING – Risk of fire!

It is dangerous to use an extended power cord and non-approved adapters.

- ► Do not use extension cables or multiple socket strips.
- ► If the power cord is too short, contact Customer Service.
- Only use adapters approved by the manufacturer.

en Safety

▲ WARNING – Risk of injury!

Hinges move when opening and closing the appliance door and can cause injury.

If built-under or integrable appliances are not in a cavity so that one side is accessible, the hinge area must be covered at the side. Covers are available from Customer Service or specialist outlets.

▲ WARNING – Risk of tipping!

Improper installation may cause the appliance to tip up.

Only install built-under or integrable appliances under a continuous worktop that is securely connected to adjacent cabinets.

Safe use

▲ WARNING – Risk of serious harm to health!

Failure to comply with safety instructions and directions for use on packagings of detergent and rinse aid products may cause serious harm to health.

Follow the safety instructions and directions for use on the packagings of detergent and rinse aid products.

▲ WARNING – Risk of explosion!

Adding solvents to the interior of the appliance may cause explosions.

► Never add solvents to the interior of the appliance.

- Highly caustic alkaline or highly acidic cleaning agents in conjunction with aluminium parts in the interior of the appliance may cause explosions.
 - Never use highly caustic alkaline or highly acidic cleaning agents, in particular commercial or industrial products, in conjunction with aluminium parts (e.g. grease filters of extractor hoods or aluminium pans), e.g. for the Machine Care programme.

▲ WARNING – Risk of injury!

- Leaving the appliance door open may result in injury.
 - Only open the appliance door to load or unload tableware in order to prevent accidents, e.g. through tripping.
 - ► Do not sit or stand on the appliance door when open.
- Knives and utensils with sharp points can cause injuries.
 - Arrange knives and utensils with sharp points in the cutlery basket with the points downwards, on the knife shelf or in the cutlery drawer.

▲ WARNING – Risk of scalding!

If you open the appliance door while the programme is running, hot water may splash out of the appliance.

Open the appliance door carefully if the programme is still running.

▲ WARNING – Risk of electric shock!

- An ingress of moisture can cause an electric shock.
 - ► Only use the appliance in enclosed spaces.
 - ► Never expose the appliance to intense heat or humidity.
 - Do not use steam- or high-pressure cleaners to clean the appliance.
- If the insulation of the power cord is damaged, this is dangerous.
 - Never let the power cord come into contact with hot appliance parts or heat sources.
 - Never let the power cord come into contact with sharp points or edges.
 - ► Never kink, crush or modify the power cord.

Damaged appliance

▲ WARNING – Risk of electric shock!

- If the appliance or the power cord is damaged, this is dangerous.
 - ► Never operate a damaged appliance.
 - Never operate an appliance with a cracked or fractured surface.

- Never pull on the power cord to unplug the appliance. Always unplug the appliance at the mains.
- If the appliance or the power cord is damaged, immediately unplug the power cord or switch off the fuse in the fuse box and turn off the water tap.
- ► "Call customer services." → Page 50
- Incorrect repairs are dangerous.
 - Repairs to the appliance should only be carried out by trained specialist staff.
 - ► Only use genuine spare parts when repairing the appliance.
 - If the power cord of this appliance is damaged, it must be replaced with a special connection cable, which is available from the manufacturer or his Customer Service.

Risk to children

▲ WARNING – Risk of suffocation!

- Children may put packaging material over their heads or wrap themselves up in it and suffocate.
 - ► Keep packaging material away from children.
 - ► Do not let children play with packaging material.
- Children may breathe in or swallow small parts, causing them to suffocate.
 - ► Keep small parts away from children.
 - ► Do not let children play with small parts.
- Children may become trapped in the appliance and suffocate.
 - ► Use the childproof lock if fitted.
 - ► Never let children play with or operate the appliance.

MARNING – Risk of harm to health!

Children can lock themselves in the appliance, thereby putting their lives at risk.

With redundant appliances, unplug the power cord. Then cut through the cord and damage the lock on the appliance door beyond repair so that the appliance door will no longer close.

▲ WARNING – Risk of crushing!

With higher-level appliances, children can become crushed between the appliance door and cabinet doors underneath.

Keep an eye on children when opening and closing the appliance door.

▲ WARNING – Risk of chemical burns!

Rinse aid and detergent may cause chemical burns to the mouth, throat and eyes.

- ► Keep children away from detergent and rinse aid products.
- Keep children away from the appliance when open. The water in the interior of the dishwasher is not drinking water. It may contain residues of detergents and rinse aid.

▲ WARNING – Risk of injury!

Children may get their fingers caught in the slots of the tablet collecting tray and injure themselves.

► Keep children away from the appliance when open.

Preventing material damage

Safe installation

ATTENTION!

- Improper installation of the appliance may cause damage.
 - If the dishwasher is installed above or below other domestic appliances, follow the information on installation in combination with a dishwasher in the installation instructions for the individual appliances.
 - If there is no information or if the installation instructions do not include the relevant information, contact the manufacturer of these appliances to check that the dishwasher can be installed above or below these appliances.
 - If no information is available from the manufacturer, the dishwasher should not be installed above or below such appliances.
 - To ensure the safe operation of all domestic appliances, continue following the installation instructions for the dishwasher.
 - Do not install the dishwasher under a hob.
 - Do not install the dishwasher near heat sources, e.g. radiators, heat storage tanks, ovens or other appliances that generate heat.
- Modified or damaged water hoses may result in material damage and damage to the appliance.
 - Never kink, crush, modify or cut through water hoses.

- Only use the water hoses supplied with the appliance or genuine spare hoses.
- Never re-use water hoses that have been used before.
- If the water pressure is too high or too low, the appliance may not be able to operate properly.
 - Make sure that the water pressure in the water supply system is min. 50 kPa (0.5 bar) and max. 1000 kPa (10 bar).
 - If the water pressure exceeds the maximum value specified, a pressure-reducing valve must be installed between the drinking water connection and the hose set of the appliance.

Safe use

ATTENTION!

- Escaping water vapour can damage fitted units.
 - When the programme ends, leave the appliance to cool down for a while before opening the door.
- Special salt for dishwashers can damage the tub due to corrosion.
 - To make sure that any special salt that escapes is washed out of the tub, add the special salt to the dispenser for special salt immediately before the programme starts.
- Detergent may damage the water softening system.
 - Only fill the dispenser of the water softening system with special dishwasher salt.
- Unsuitable cleaning agents may damage the appliance.
 - Do not use a steam cleaner.
 - So as not to scratch the finish on the appliance, do not use sponges with a rough surface or abrasive cleaning agents.

To prevent corrosion, do not use sponge cloths on dishwashers with a stainless steel front or rinse such cloths thoroughly several times before using them for the first time.

Environmental protection and saving energy

Disposing of packaging

The packaging materials are environmentally compatible and can be recycled.

 Sort the individual components by type and dispose of them separately.

Saving energy

If you follow these instructions, your appliance will use less electricity and less water.

Use the Eco 50 $^\circ$ programme.

- + The Eco 50 ° programme is energy-efficient and environmentally friendly.
 - → "Programmes", Page 17

AquaSensor

The AquaSensor is an optical measuring device (light barrier) which measures the turbidity of the rinsing water. You can save water with the AquaSensor.

Use of the AquaSensor depends on the programme. If the soiling level is high, the rinsing water is drained off and replaced with fresh water. If the soiling level is lower, the rinsing water is used in the next wash cycle, so reducing water consumption by 3-6 litres. In the automatic programmes the temperature and run time are additionally adjusted to the level of soiling.

Installation and connection

To ensure proper operation, connect the appliance to the power and water supply correctly. Observe the specified criteria and the installation instructions.

Scope of supply

After unpacking all parts, check for any damage in transit and completeness of the delivery.

If you have any complaints, contact the dealer who sold you the appliance or our Customer Service.

Note: The appliance has been tested at the factory to check it is in working order. It is possible that water has left marks on the appliance. These marks will disappear after the first wash cycle.

The delivery consists of the following:

- Dishwasher
- Operating instructions
- Installation Instructions
- Further information documents
- Installation material
- Steam guard plate
- Salt filling aid funnel
- Mains cable
- Quick reference guide

Installing and connecting the appliance

You can position your built-under or integrable appliance in a fitted kitchen between wooden and plastic walls. If you subsequently install your dishwasher as a free-standing appliance, you must stop it from tipping over, e.g. by screwing it to the wall or installing it under a continuous worktop that is securely connected to adjacent cabinets.

- **1.** "Follow the safety instructions." \rightarrow Page 4
- "Follow the instructions for electrical connection." → Page 12
- **3.** Check the Scope of supply and the condition of the appliance.
- 4. Consult the installation instructions for the installation dimensions required.
- Make the appliance level using the height-adjustable feet.
 Make sure that the appliance is standing on the floor securely.
- 6. "Install the drainage connection." → Page 12
- "Install the drinking water connection." → Page 12
- 8. Connect the appliance to the power supply.

Drainage connection

Connect your appliance to drainage connection so dirty water is discharged via the wash cycle.

Installing the drainage connection

- 1. Consult the installation instructions supplied for the steps required here.
- 2. Connect the wastewater hose to the outlet connection of the siphon using the enclosed parts.
- **3.** When doing so, check that the wastewater hose is not kinked, crushed or twisted.
- 4. Also check that there is no cover in the drainage system preventing the wastewater from being discharged.

Drinking water connection

Connect your appliance to a drinking water connection.

Installing the drinking water connection

Note

- If you are replacing the appliance, you must use a new water supply hose.
- 1. Consult the installation instructions supplied for the steps required here.
- 2 Connect the appliance to the drinking water connection using the enclosed parts.

Observe the "Technical data" \rightarrow Page 51.

3. When doing so, check that the drinking water connection is not kinked, crushed or twisted.

Electrical connection

Connect your appliance to the power supply.

Connecting the appliance to the electricity supply

Notes

- Please follow the "Safety instructions" → Page 4.
- Connect the appliance to alternating current only, in the range of 220 - 240 V and 50 Hz or 60 Hz.
- Please note that the water safety system is only functional if there is a power supply.
- 1. Insert the non-heating appliance plug of the power cable into the appliance.
- 2. Insert the mains plug of the appliance into a nearby socket.

The connection data for the appliance can be found on the rating plate.

3. Check that the mains plug is inserted properly.

Familiarising yourself with your appliance

Appliance

You can find an overview of the parts of your appliance here.



¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

2	Detergent dispenser	"Detergent" → Page 26 is added to the detergent dispenser.	
3	Bottom basket	"Bottom basket" → Page 20	
4	Filter system	"Filter system" \rightarrow Page 36	
5	Dispenser for special salt	Add the special salt to the dispenser for special salt. \rightarrow "Water softening system", Page 23	
6	Tablet collecting tray	During the wash cycle tablets automatically fall out of the detergent dispenser into the tablet collecting tray where they can fully dissolve.	
7	Top basket	"Top basket" → <i>Page 19</i>	
8	Cutlery shelf ¹	"Cutlery shelf" \rightarrow Page 20	
9	Upper spray arms	The upper spray arms wash the tableware in the top basket. If the tableware has not been washed properly, clean the spray arms. \rightarrow "Cleaning spray arms", Page 37	
10	Lower spray arm	The lower spray arm washes the tableware in the bottom basket. If the tableware has not been washed properly, clean the spray arms. \rightarrow "Cleaning spray arms", Page 37	
11	Cutlery basket	"Cutlery basket" \rightarrow Page 20	
12	Dispenser for rinse aid	Add rinse aid to the dispenser for rinse aid. → "Rinse aid system", Page 25	

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

Controls

You can use the control panel to configure all functions of your appliance and to obtain information about the operating status. With some buttons you can perform different functions.



¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

Programmes

You can find an overview of the programmes that can be selected here. Different programmes, which can be found on the control panel of your appliance, are available depending on the appliance configuration. The running time may vary depending on the programme selected. The running time depends on the water temperature, the quantity of tableware, the level of soiling and the additional function selected. The runtime will change if the rinse aid system is switched off or rinse aid needs to be added. The consumption values can be found in the quick reference guide. The consumption values relate to normal conditions and a water hardness of 9 - 20 °E. Different influencing factors such as water temperature or pipe pressure may result in deviations.

Programme: Use		Programme sequence	Additional func- tions
 Intensive 70° Tableware: Washing pots and pans, non-fragile tableware and cutlery. Level of soiling: Removing stubborn burned or dried-on food remnants containing starch and protein. 		Intensive: Pre-Rinse Cleaning 70 °C Intermediate rinse Final rinse 69 °C Drying	All → "Additional functions", Page 18
Auto 45-65°	 Tableware: Cleaning mixed tableware and cutlery. Level of soiling: Removing common household food remnants lightly dried-on. 	 Sensor-controlled: Optimised by sensors depending on the soiling of the rinsing water. 	All → "Additional functions", Page 18
Eco 50°	 Tableware: Cleaning mixed tableware and cutlery. Level of soiling: Removing common household food remnants lightly dried-on. 	Most economical pro- gramme: Pre-Rinse Cleaning 50 °C Intermediate rinse Final rinse 63 °C Drying	All → "Additional functions", Page 18

Programme:	Use	Programme sequence	Additional func- tions
Express 65° - 1h	 Tableware: Cleaning mixed tableware and cutlery. Level of soiling: Removing common household food remnants lightly dried-on. 	Time-optimised: Cleaning 65 °C Intermediate rinse Final rinse 69 °C Drying	Extra Dry → "Additional functions", Page 18
Machine Care Machine Care	Only when using unloaded appliance.	Machine Care 70 °C	None

Note: The relatively long running time in the Eco 50 ° programme is due to longer soaking and drying times. This results in optimal consumption values.

Information for test institutes

Test institutes are provided with information for comparability tests, e.g. according to EN60436.

These are the conditions for conducting the tests, however they are not the results or consumption values. E-mail enquiries to: dishwasher@testappliances.com

The product number (E-Nr.) and the production number (FD) are required here. They can be found on the rating plate on the appliance door.

Additional functions

You can find an overview of the additional functions that can be selected here. Different additional functions, which can be found on the control panel of your appliance, are available depending on the appliance configuration.

Additional func- tion	Use
Speed + Perfect SpeedPerfect+	 The run time is shortened by 15% to 75% depending on the rinse programme. The additional function can be activated before the start of the pro- gramme and at any time when the pro- gramme is running. Energy and water con- sumption are increased.
Extra Dry Extra Dry	 For a better drying result the final rinse temperature is increased and the drying phase extended. Especially suitable for drying plastic parts. There is a slight increase in energy consumption and the run time is extended.

Features

You can find an overview of the possible features of your appliance and how to use them here.

These features depend on the model of your appliance.

Top basket

Arrange cups, glasses and small items of tableware in the top basket.



Knife shelf a¹

You can adjust the height of the top basket to make room for larger items of tableware.

Adjusting top basket with pairs of rollers

To wash large items of tableware in the baskets, adjust the shelf position of the top basket.

1. Pull out the top basket.

2. Remove the basket.



3. Re-attach the basket to the upper rollers (setting 3) or lower rollers (setting 1).

→ "Basket heights", Page 22



Check that the basket is level on both sides.

4. Slide the basket back in.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

Bottom basket

Arrange pans and plates in the bottom basket.



Cutlery basket a¹

Large plates up to a diameter of 31 cm can be arranged in the bottom basket as shown.



Cutlery basket

Arrange cutlery in the cutlery basket, always without sorting it and with the sharp points downwards.



Etagere

Use the cutlery shelf and space underneath for small cups and glasses or for large items of cutlery, e.g. cooking spoons or serving cutlery.



If you do not need the cutlery shelf, you can fold it up.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

Folding prongs

Use the folding prongs to position tableware securely, e.g. plates.



You can fold the prongs down to position pans, bowls and glasses better.¹

Folding down prongs¹

If you do not need the prongs, fold them down.

1. Push the lever forwards ① and fold down the prongs ②.



- 2. To use the prongs again, fold them back up.
- The prongs audibly click into position.

Knife shelf

Use the shelf for knives and long items of cutlery.



Baking sheet spray head

Use the baking sheet spray head to clean large items of tableware, e.g. trays, grilles and plates.



Arrange max. 2 baking sheets and 2 grilles as shown to ensure that the spray jet can reach all parts.

Note: Check that the appliance is always operated with the top basket or the baking sheet spray head.

Inserting baking sheet spray head

Use the baking sheet spray head instead of the top basket to clean large trays, grilles and plates.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

- 1. Remove top basket.
- 2. Insert the baking sheet spray head in the holder ① and turn to the right ②.



The baking sheet spray head clicks into position.

Basket heights

Set the baskets at the right height.

Appliance height 81.5 cm with cutlery basket

Removing baking sheet spray head

If you no longer require the baking sheet spray head, remove it from the appliance.

- 1. Turn the baking sheet spray head anticlockwise and remove from the holder.
- 2 Insert the top basket in the appliance.

Setting	Top basket	Bottom basket
1 max. ø	22 cm	31 cm
2 max. ø	24.5 cm	27.5 cm
3 max. ø	27 cm	25 cm

Before using for the first time

Configure the settings for initial start-up.

Performing the initial configuration

On initial start-up or after a reset to the factory settings, you will need to make settings.

Requirement: "The appliance has been installed and connected." → *Page 11*

- **1.** "Add special salt." \rightarrow Page 24
- **2.** "Add rinse aid." \rightarrow Page 25
- **3.** "Switch on the appliance." \rightarrow Page 31
- 4. "Setting the water softening system." → Page 23
- "Set the amount of rinse aid to be dispensed." → Page 26
- **6.** "Add detergent" \rightarrow *Page 26*.
- 7. Start the Programme with the highest cleaning temperature without tableware.

To remove any marks from water or other residues, we recommend you operate the appliance without tableware before using it for the first time.

Tip: You can change these settings and other "Basic settings" \rightarrow *Page 33* at any time.

Water softening system

Hard water leaves limescale on the tableware as well as the washing tank and parts of the appliance may become blocked.

To ensure good dishwashing results, you can treat the water with special salt and the water softening system. To avoid damage to the appliance, water with a hardness above 9 °E must be softened.

Overview of water hardness settings

You can find an overview of the water hardness values that can be selected here.

You can find out how hard your water is from your local water company or by using a water hardness tester.

Water hard- ness value °E	Hardness range	mmol/l	Setting	"LED A" → <i>Page 15</i>	"LED B" → <i>Page 15</i>	"LED C" <i>→ Page 15</i>
0 - 8	Soft	0 - 1.1	0			
9 - 20	Medium	1.2 - 2.9	1			
21-26	Hard	3.0 - 3.7	2			
27 - 44	Hard	3.8 - 6.2	3			

Note: Set the water hardness determined on your appliance.

 \rightarrow "Setting the water softening system", Page 23

With a water hardness of 0 - 8 °E you can dispense with special salt for dishwashers and switch off the water softening system.

 \rightarrow "Switching off the water softening system", Page 24

Setting the water softening system

Set the water hardness on your appliance.

- Determine the water hardness and the appropriate setting value.
 → "Overview of water hardness settings", Page 23
- 2. Press 🕛.
- **3.** To open the appliance settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.
- \checkmark \blacksquare is flashing on the display.
- **4.** Press Start repeatedly until the right water hardness has been set.

0, 1, 2 or 3 LEDs will light up accordingly.

 \rightarrow "Overview of water hardness settings", Page 23

The factory setting is level 1 ("LED A" \rightarrow Page 15).

5. To save the settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.

Special salt

You can use special salt to soften water.

Adding special salt

If the special salt refill indicator lights up, add special salt to the dispenser for special salt just before the programme starts. The amount of special salt required depends on the water hardness: the higher the water hardness, the greater the amount of special salt required.

ATTENTION!

- Detergent may damage the water softening system.
 - Only fill the dispenser of the water softening system with special dishwasher salt.
- Special salt for dishwashers can damage the tub due to corrosion.
 - To make sure that any special salt that escapes is washed out of the tub, add the special salt to the dispenser for special salt immediately before the programme starts.
- 1. Unscrew the lid of the dispenser for special salt and remove.
- 2. On initial start-up: Fill the dispenser right up with water.

3. Note: Only use special salt for dishwashers. Do not use salt tablets. Do not use table salt.

Add the special salt to the dispenser.



Funnel a¹

Fill the dispenser right up with special salt. The water in the dispenser is displaced and forced out.

4. Place the lid back on the dispenser and turn to close.

Switching off the water softening system

If you find the special salt refill indicator irritating, e.g. when using combined detergents with salt replacement substances, you can switch the salt refill indicator off.

Note

To avoid damage to the appliance, only switch off the water softening system in the following cases:

 The water hardness is max. 26 °E and you are using combined detergents with salt replacement substances. According to manufacturers, combined detergents with salt replacement substances can gen-

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

erally only be used up to a water hardness of 26 °E without adding special salt.

- The water hardness is 0 8 °E. You do not need to use special salt.
- 1. Press ().
- 2. To open the appliance settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.
- \checkmark \boxdot is flashing on the display.
- 3. Press Start repeatedly until no LED lights up (level 0).
 → "Overview of water hardness settings", Page 23
- 4. To save the settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.
- The water softening system is switched off and the salt refill indicator is deactivated.

Regeneration of the water softening system

In order to obtain fault-free function of the water softening system, the appliance performs regeneration of the water softening system at regular intervals.

Regeneration of the water softening system takes place before the end of the main rinse cycle in all programmes. It will increase the run time and consumption values, e.g. water and electricity.

Overview of consumption values with regeneration the water softening system

Here you can find an overview of the maximum additional run time and consumption values during regeneration of the water softening system.

Regeneration of the water softening system after x rinse cycles	7
Additional run time in minutes	6

Additional water consumption in 5 litres

Additional power consumption in 0.05 kWh

The consumption values specified are laboratory measurements determined in accordance with the currently applicable standard and using the Eco 50° programme and the factory value of the water hardness is set to 9 - 20°E.

Rinse aid system

Rinse aid

For optimum drying results, use rinse aid.

Only use rinse aid for domestic dishwashers.

Adding rinse aid

If the rinse aid refill indicator lights up, top up with rinse aid. Only use rinse aid for domestic dishwashers.

 Press the catch on the lid of the dispenser for rinse aid ① and lift ②.



en Detergent

2. Add rinse aid up to the max mark.



3. If rinse aid spills out, remove it from the tub.

Spilled rinse aid can cause excessive frothing during the wash cycle.

- 4. Close the lid of the dispenser for rinse aid.
- ✓ The lid clicks into position.

Setting the amount of rinse aid

If there are streaks or water marks on tableware, change the amount of rinse aid.

- 1. Press 🕛.
- 2. To open the appliance settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.
- \checkmark \blacksquare is flashing on the display.
- 3. Press Setup 3 sec. repeatedly until * flashes.
- 4. Press Start repeatedly until the right amount of rinse aid has been set.

0, 1, 2 or 3 LEDs will light up accordingly.

The factory setting is level 2 ("LED A and LED B" \rightarrow Page 15).

 A low setting adds less rinse aid during the wash cycle and reduces streaking on tableware.

- A higher setting adds more rinse aid during the wash cycle, reduces water marks and improves the drying result.
- 5. To save the settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.

Switching the rinse aid system off

If you find the rinse aid refill indicator irritating, e.g. when using combined detergents with a rinse aid component, you can switch the rinse aid system off.

Tip: The function of rinse aid is limited with combined detergents. You will generally get better results using rinse aid.

- 1. Press 🕛.
- 2. To open the appliance settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.
- \checkmark \blacksquare is flashing on the display.
- Press Setup 3 sec. repeatedly until * flashes.
- Press Start repeatedly until no "LED" → Page 15 lights up (level 0).
- 5. To save the settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.
- The rinse aid system is switched off and the rinse aid refill indicator is deactivated.

Detergent

Suitable detergents

Only use detergents that are suitable for dishwashers. Both separate and combined detergents are suitable. For optimum washing and drying results, use separate detergent, adding "Special salt" \rightarrow Page 24 and "Rinse aid" \rightarrow Page 25 separately. Modern, powerful detergents mainly use a low-alkaline formulation with enzymes. Enzymes break down starch and remove protein. Oxygenbased bleaching agents are generally used to remove coloured marks, e.g. tea or ketchup.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions for each detergent.

Detergent	Description
Tabs	Tabs are suitable for all cleaning functions and do not need to be measured out. With shorter "Programmes" \rightarrow Page 17 tabs sometimes do not dissolve entirely and leave residues of detergent. This may impair the cleaning effect.
Powder deter- gent	Powder detergent is re- commended for shorter "Programmes" \rightarrow Page 17. The dosage can be adjus- ted to the level of soiling.
Liquid detergent	 Liquid detergent works faster and is recommen- ded for shorter "Pro- grammes" → Page 17 without PreRinse. Sometimes liquid deter- gent may leak out despite the detergent dispenser being closed. This is not a fault and is non-critical if you remember the follow- ing: Only choose a pro- gramme without PreR- inse. Do not select timer pro- gramming for starting the programme. The dosage can be adjus- ted to the level of soiling

Tip: Suitable detergents are available online via our website or from "Customer Service" \rightarrow Page 50.

Separate detergents

Separate detergents are products that do not contain components other than detergent, e.g. powder detergent or liquid detergent.

With powder and liquid detergent the dosage can be individually adjusted to the level of soiling of the table-ware.

For better washing and drying results and to avoid damage to the appliance, please additionally use "Special salt" \rightarrow Page 24 and "Rinse aid" \rightarrow Page 25.

Combined detergent

Besides conventional separate detergents, a number of products are available with additional functions. These products contain not only detergent but also rinse aid and salt replacement substances (3in1) and, depending on the combination (4in1, 5in1, ...), additional components such as glass protection or stainless steel cleaner.

According to manufacturers, combined detergents generally only function up to a water hardness of 26 °E. With a water hardness above 26 °E you will need to add special salt and rinse aid. For the best washing and drying results we recommend using special salt and rinse aid from a water hardness of 17 °E. If you are using combined detergent, the washing programme is adjusted automatically to ensure the best possible washing and drying result.

Unsuitable detergents

Do not use detergent which could cause damage to the appliance or present a risk to health.

Detergent	Description
Hand washing-up liquid	Hand washing-up liquid can cause increased froth- ing and damage the appli- ance.
Detergent con- taining chlorine	Chlorine residue on table- ware may present a risk to health.

Information on detergents

Follow the instructions on detergents in everyday use.

- Detergents marked as "organic" or "ecological" (environmentally friendly) generally contain lower levels of active agents or completely dispense with certain substances. The cleaning effect may be restricted here.
- Set the rinse aid and the water softening system to the separate detergent or combined detergent in use.
- According to manufacturers, combined detergents with salt replacement substances can only be used up to a certain water hardness, usually 26 °E, without adding special salt. For the best washing and drying results we recommend using special salt from a water hardness of 17 °E.
- To prevent sticking, only touch detergents in a water-soluble pouch with dry hands and only ever place them in a dry detergent dispenser.
- Even if the rinse aid and special salt refill indicators light up, washing programmes will run properly with combined detergents.

- The function of rinse aid is limited with combined detergents. You will generally get better results using rinse aid.
- Use tablets with a special drying performance.

Adding detergent

- 1. To open the detergent dispenser, press the locking latch.
- 2. Add the detergent to the dry detergent dispenser.



If you are using tablets, one is enough. Insert the tablets in a horizontal position.

If you are using powder or liquid detergent, follow the manufacturer's instructions and quantities for dosage in the detergent dispenser.

20 ml – 25 ml detergent is sufficient for normal soiling. If tableware is only lightly soiled, slightly less than the amount of detergent specified is usually sufficient. **3.** Close the lid of the detergent dispenser.



- ✓ The lid clicks into position.
- The detergent dispenser will open automatically at the optimum time during the programme. Powder or liquid detergent will spread around the washing tank and dissolve there. Tablets will fall into the tablet collecting tray and dissolve in the right dosage. In order to ensure that tablets can dissolve evenly, do not place any other objects in the tablet collecting tray.

Tip: If you use powder detergent and select a program with pre-rinse, you can also add a little detergent to the interior door of the appliance.

Tableware

Only clean tableware that is suitable for dishwashers.

Note: Decorated glassware and parts made of aluminium or silver may fade or discolour with dishwashing. Delicate types of glass may turn cloudy after a few washing cycles.

Damage to glass and tableware

Avoid damage to glass and tableware.

Cause	Recommendation
 The following table- ware is not dish- washer-safe: Items of cutlery and tableware made from wood Decorated glass- ware, antique and hand-crafted table- ware Plastic parts not resistant to heat Tableware made from copper or tin Tableware soiled with ash, wax, lub- ricating grease or paint Very small items of tableware 	Only put tableware in the dishwasher if it is marked as dish- washer-safe by the manufacturer.
Glass and tableware was not dishwasher- safe.	Only put glasses and china in the dish- washer if it is marked as dishwasher-safe by the manufacturer.
The chemical com- position of the deter- gent causes damage.	Use a detergent marked as gentle on tableware by the man- ufacturer.
Highly caustic alkaline or highly acidic clean- ing agents, in particu- lar commercial or in- dustrial cleaning agents, are not suit- able for dishwashers in conjunction with aluminium.	If you are using highly caustic alkaline or highly acidic cleaning agents, in particular commercial or indus- trial cleaning agents, do not put aluminium parts in the dish- washer interior.

Cause	Recommendation
The water temperat- ure of the programme is too high.	Select a programme with lower temperat- ures. After the programme has ended, take glass- ware and cutlery out of the appliance without delay.

Arrange tableware

Arrange tableware correctly to optimise the dishwashing result and prevent damage to both the appliance and tableware.

Tips

- Using the appliance allows you to save energy and water compared to washing-up by hand.
- See our website for examples of how to load your appliance efficiently, free of charge.
- To save energy and water, load the machine with the number of place settings specified.
 → "Technical specifications", Page 51
- For better washing and drying results, position items with curves or recesses at an angle so water can run off.



1. Remove large remnants of food from tableware.

To save resources, do not prerinse tableware under running water.

- 2. Observe the following when arranging tableware:
 - Put heavily soiled tableware in the bottom basket, e.g. pans. The more powerful the spray jet, the better the dishwashing result will be.
 - To prevent damage to tableware, arrange it so it is stable and cannot tip over.
 - To prevent injury, arrange cutlery with the points and sharp edges facing down.
 - Position containers with the openings facing down so no water can collect in them.
 - Do not block the spray arms make sure that they can turn freely.
 - Do not place small parts in the tablet collecting tray and do not block it with tableware so as not to obstruct the lid of the detergent dispenser.



Removing tableware

MARNING Risk of injury!

Hot tableware can cause burns to the skin. When hot, tableware is sensitive to shock, may crack and can result in injury.

- When the programme has ended, do not empty the appliance until the tableware has cooled down for a while.
- 1. To prevent water dripping on the tableware, unload it starting at the bottom and working up.
- 2. Check the washing tank and accessories for soiling and clean if necessary.

→ "Cleaning and servicing", Page 34

Basic operation

Opening appliance door

Open the appliance door.

Switching on the appliance

► Press ①.

The Eco 50° programme is set by default.

The Eco 50° programme is an especially environmentally friendly programme and ideal for normally soiled tableware. It is the most efficient programme for the combination of energy/water consumption for this type of tableware and evidences conformity with the EU Ecodesign Directive.

If you do not perform any actions on the appliance for 10 minutes, the appliance will automatically switch off.

Setting a programme

To adjust the wash cycle to the soiling level of the tableware, select a suitable programme.

- Press the programme button repeatedly until the right programme has been selected.
 → "Programmes", Page 17
- The programme is set and the LED flashes.

Setting additional functions

You can set additional functions to complete the washing programme selected.

Note: The additional functions which can be used depend on the programme selected.

- → "Programmes", Page 17
- Press the button for the relevant additional function.
 → "Additional functions", Page 18
- The additional function is set and the additional function button flashes.

Setting timer programming¹

You can delay the start of the programme by 3, 6 or 9 hours.

- 1. Press ^{start} repeatedly until the relevant display lights up.
- 2. To activate timer programming, press Start.

Note: To deactivate timer programming, press ^{start} repeatedly until none of the displays 3h, 6h or 9h light up.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

Starting the programme

- Press Start.
- While the programme is running, a spot of light is projected onto the floor below the appliance door. This light will not be visible if the appliance is installed at eye level with the cabinet front fitted flush.
- The programme has ended when no indicators on the controls light up.
- The programme has ended when the spot of light is no longer visible on the floor.

Notes

- If you want to add more tableware while the appliance is running, do not use the tablet collecting tray as a handle for the top basket. You might touch the partially dissolved tablet.
- You can only change a programme when running if you cancel it.

→ "Terminate programme", Page 32

The appliance switches off automatically 1 minute after the end of the programme to save energy. If you open the appliance door immediately after the programme has ended, the appliance will switch off after 4 seconds.

Interrupting programme

Note: When you open the appliance door once the appliance has heated up, leave the door slightly ajar for a few minutes and then close it. This will help prevent excess pressure building up in the appliance and stop the appliance door bursting open.

- 1. Press 🕛.
- The programme is saved and the appliance switches off.

2. Press () to resume the programme.

Terminate programme

To end a programme early or to switch from a programme that has already started, you will need to cancel it first.

- 1. Open the appliance door.
- 2. Press Reset 4 sec. for approx. 4 seconds.
- 3. Close the appliance door.
- All displays light up.
- As soon as the displays are off, the residual water is pumped out.
- The programme is cancelled and ends after approx. 1 minute.

Switching off appliance

- Please note the information on "Safe use" → Page 10.
- 2. Press 🕛.

Tip: If you press ⁽⁾ during the wash cycle, the programme currently running will be interrupted. When you switch the appliance back on, the programme continues automatically.

Basic settings

You can configure the appliance to meet your needs.

Overview of basic settings

The basic settings depend on the features of your appliance.

Basic setting	Selection	Description
Water hardness	Scale with 4 level	Set the water hardness. → "Setting the water softening system", Page 23
Rinse aid disp.	Scale with 4 level	Set the amount of rinse aid to be dispensed or switch off. → "Setting the amount of rinse aid", Page 26
Extra Dry	On Off ¹	Switch Extra Dry on or off for each operation. For a better drying result the temperature in the final rinse is increased. This may increase the running time slightly. Note: Please take care with del- icate tableware. → "Setting Extra Dry", Page 33
Tone volume	Scale with 4 level	Adjustment of tone volume. → "Setting signal volume", Page 34
Factory setting	Reset	Restore changed settings to the factory settings. The settings for initial start-up must be configured. → "Restoring factory settings", Page 34
¹ Factory setting (may vary	according to model)	
 Setting Extra Dry Press ⁽¹⁾. To open the appliar press Setup 3 sec. for ✓ S is flashing on the 	nce settings, 3 seconds. e display.	 4. Press Start repeatedly until the LEDs show the right value. If "LED A" → Page 15 is not lit, Extra Dry is switched off. If "LED A" → Page 15 is lit, Extra

- 3. Press Setup 3 sec. repeatedly until S and ➡ flash in the display.
- 5. To save the settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.
Setting signal volume

- 1. Press 🕛.
- 2. To open the appliance settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.
- \checkmark \bowtie is flashing on the display.
- 3. Press Setup 3 sec. repeatedly until S and [★] flash in the display.
- 4. Press Start repeatedly until the right signal volume has been set.

0, 1, 2 or 3 LEDs will light up accordingly. The signal tone selected will be heard.

The factory setting is level 2 ("LED A and LED B" \rightarrow Page 15).

5. To save the settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.

Restoring factory settings

- 1. Press 🕛.
- 2. To open the appliance settings, press Setup 3 sec. for 3 seconds.
- \checkmark \bowtie is flashing on the display.
- Press Setup 3 sec. repeatedly until ➡, S and * flash in the display.
- 4. Press Start to set the appliance back to the factory settings.
- The appliance is reset.

Cleaning and servicing

To keep your appliance working efficiently for a long time, it is important to clean and maintain it carefully.

Cleaning the tub

WARNING Risk of harm to health!

Using detergents containing chlorine may result in harm to health.

 Never use detergents containing chlorine.

- 1. Remove any coarse soiling in the interior with a damp cloth.
- 2 Add detergent to the detergent dispenser.
- Select the programme with the highest temperature.
 → "Programmes", Page 17
- "Start the programme without tableware." → Page 32

Cleaning products

Only use suitable cleaning products to clean your appliance. \rightarrow "Safe use", Page 10

Tips on appliance care

Follow the tips on appliance care to make sure your appliance functions properly at all times.

Action	Benefit
Wipe the door seals, the front of the dish- washer and the con- trol panel regularly us- ing a damp cloth and washing-up liquid.	This ensures the parts of the appliance will remain clean and hy- gienic.
If the appliance is not going to be used for a while, leave the door slightly ajar.	This will prevent un- pleasant odours.

Machine Care Machine Care

Deposits, e.g. from remnants of food and limescale, can cause your appliance to malfunction. To avoid such faults and reduce odours, we recommend cleaning your appliance at regular intervals.

Machine Care combined with machine care products and machine cleaners is the right programme for the care of your appliance. **Tip:** You can get our tested and approved Dishwasher Care and Machine Cleaner for Dishwashers online at https://www.bosch-home.com/store or from customer service.

Machine Care is a programme which removes various deposits in one washing cycle. Cleaning takes place in two phases:

Phase	Removal of	Detergent	Placement
1	Grease and limescale	Liquid machine care product or machine descaler in powder form.	Appliance interior, e.g. bottle hung in the cutlery basket or powder in the interior.
2	Food remnants and de- posits	Machine cleaner	Detergent dispenser

To ensure optimum cleaning performance, the programme doses the detergents independently of each another during the relevant cleaning phase. Correct placement of the detergents is necessary here. Run Machine Care without tableware if the indicator for Machine Care lights up on the control panel or if advised to do so by the display. The indicator will go out after you have run Machine Care. If your appliance does not have a reminder function, we recommend performing Machine Care every 2 months.

Running Machine Care

Run the Machine Care programme if the indicator for Machine Care lights up on the control panel or if advised to do so by the display.

Notes

- Run the Machine Care programme without any tableware in the dishwasher.
- Only use machine care products and machine cleaners specially designed for dishwashers.

- Make sure that there are no aluminium parts, e.g. extractor hood grease filters or aluminium pans, in the interior of the appliance.
- If you have not run Machine Care after 3 washing cycles, the indicator for Machine Care will go out automatically.
- For optimum cleaning performance, ensure the correct placement of cleaners.
- Follow the safety instructions given on the packagings of the machine care products and machine cleaners.
- 1. Remove any coarse soiling in the interior with a damp cloth.
- 2. Clean the filters.
- **3.** Place the machine care product in the appliance interior.

Only use machine care products specially designed for dishwashers.

4. Pour the machine cleaner into the detergent dispenser until it is filled completely.

en Cleaning and servicing

Do not place any additional machine cleaner in the appliance interior.

- 5. Press Care .
- 6. Press Start.
- Machine Care is run.
- Once the programme has ended, the indicator for Machine Care goes out.

Filter system

The filter system removes coarse soiling from the dishwashing cycle.



Cleaning filters

Soiling in the dishwashing water may block the filters.

1. After each wash check the filters for residue.

- Turn the coarse filter anticlockwise
 and remove the filter system ⁽²⁾.
 - Check that no foreign objects fall into the sump.



3. Pull down the micro filter to remove.



 Press the locking catches ① together and lift the coarse filter out ②.



5. Clean the filter elements under running water. Carefully clean the rim of dirt between the coarse and the fine filter.

- 6. Re-assemble the filter system. Make sure that the locking catches on the coarse filter click into position.
- Insert the filter system into the appliance and turn the coarse filter clockwise.

Make sure that the arrow markings match up.

Cleaning spray arms

Limescale and soiling in the dishwashing water may block the nozzles and bearings on the spray arms. Clean the spray arms regularly.

1. Unscrew the upper spray arms ① and pull down to remove ②.



2. Pull up the lower spray arm to remove.



- 3. Check the outlet nozzles on the spray arms for blockages under running water and remove any foreign bodies.
- 4. Insert the lower spray arm.
- ✓ The spray arm clicks into position.
- 5. Insert the upper spray arms and screw firmly in place.

Troubleshooting

You can rectify minor faults on your appliance yourself. Read the troubleshooting information before contacting after-sales service. This will avoid unnecessary costs.

Risk of electric shock!

Incorrect repairs are dangerous.

- Repairs to the appliance should only be carried out by trained specialist staff.
- ► Only use genuine spare parts when repairing the appliance.
- If the power cord of this appliance is damaged, it must be replaced with a special connection cable, which is available from the manufacturer or his Customer Service.

Error code / Fault display / Signal

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Display for water supply lights up	Supply hose is kinked.	 Install the supply hose without kinks.
	Water tap is turned off.	► Turn on the water tap.
	Water tap is jammed or furred up.	• Turn on the water tap.
	The filters in the water con- nection of the supply or AquaStop hose are blocked.	 Switch off the appliance. Pull out the mains plug. Turn off the water tap. Unscrew the water connection. Remove the filter from the supply hose
		6. Clean the filter.
		7. Re-insert the filter in the supply hose.
		8. Screw the water connection back on.

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Display for water supply lights up		 Check the water connection for leaks. Restore the power supply.
		11. Switch the appliance on.
	Wastewater hose is blocked or kinked.	 Reposition the wastewater hose without kinks. Remove residues.
	Siphon connection is still sealed.	 Check the connection to the siphon and open if necessary.
	Cover of the wastewater pump is loose.	► Secure the cover of the "Wastewa- ter pump " → Page 49 so it clicks into position.
Display "Check water sup- ply" flashes	A technical fault is present.	 Press ⁽¹⁾. Unplug the appliance or switch off the fuse. Wait at least 2 minutes. Insert the mains plug of the appli- ance in a socket or switch on the fuse. Switch the appliance on. If the problem occurs again: Press ⁽¹⁾. Turn off the water tap. Pull out the mains plug. Contact "Customer Service" → Page 50 and give the er- ror code.
Displays flash	Appliance door is not closed properly.	 Close the appliance door. Arrange the tableware so that no parts project beyond the basket and prevent the appliance door from closing properly.

Washing results

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Tableware is not dry.	No rinse aid used or dosage set too low.	 Add "Rinse aid" → Page 25. Set the amount of rinse aid to be dispensed. → "Setting the amount of rinse aid", Page 26

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Tableware is not dry.	Programme or programme option has no drying phase, or the drying phase is too brief.	 "Select a programme with drying, e.g. intensive, strong or ECO pro- gramme." → Page 17 Some option buttons decrease the
		drying result, e.g varioSpeed.
	Water collects in recesses of the tableware or cutlery.	 Position tableware at an angle where possible.
		\mathbf{X}
	The combined detergent	1. Use rinse aid to improve drying per-
	formance.	2 Use a different combined detergent with a better drying performance.
	Extra Dry not activated to improve drying performance.	► Activate Extra Dry.
	Tableware removed too early or drying process not yet ended.	 Wait until the programme ends. Only remove tableware 30 minutes after the programme has ended.
	Rinse aid used has a limited drying performance.	 Use a name-brand rinse aid. Eco products may have limited effectiveness.
Plastic tableware is not dry.	Not a fault. As plastic does not store heat so well, it also does not dry as well.	 No remedial action possible.
Cutlery is not dry.	Cutlery not arranged prop- erly in the cutlery basket or cutlery drawer.	Droplets can form on the cutlery con- tact points.
		1. "Arrange cutlery individually where possible." \rightarrow Page 30
		2 Avoid points of contact.

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Appliance interior still wet after wash cycle.	Not a fault. The condensa- tion drying principle causes water droplets in the tub – they are indeed desirable here. The moisture in the air condenses on the inside walls, runs off and is pumped out.	No action required.
Remnants of food on table- ware.	Tableware is placed too close together or basket is overfilled.	 Arrange tableware with sufficient space in between. The spray jets must reach the sur- faces of the tableware. Avoid points of contact.
	Spray arm rotation is blocked.	 Arrange tableware so that it does not obstruct spray arm rotation.
	Spray arm nozzles are blocked.	• Clean the "Spray arms" \rightarrow Page 37.
	Filters are soiled.	 ► Clean the filters. → "Cleaning filters", Page 36
	Filters are inserted incor- rectly and/or not engaged.	 Insert the filters properly. → "Filter system", Page 36 Engage the filters.
	Washing programme selec- ted too weak.	 Select a more intensive washing programme. → "Programmes", Page 17
	Tableware has been pre- cleaned too intensely. The sensors chose a weaker pro- gramme. Stubborn soiling cannot be entirely removed.	 Only remove large remnants of food and do not prerinse tableware.
	Tall narrow receptacles in corner areas are not rinsed adequately.	 Do not position tall narrow recept- acles at too great an angle or in corner areas.
	Top baskets on right and left are not set to same height.	 Set the top baskets on the left and right to the same level. → "Top basket", Page 19

Fault	Cause	Tro	oubleshooting
Detergent residue in the appliance	Lid of the detergent dis- penser is blocked by items of tableware parts and will not open.	1.	Arrange tableware in the top basket tableware so the tab collecting tray is not obstructed by tableware. → "Arrange tableware", Page 30
		2	Items of tableware are blocking the dispenser lid.
		-	grance dispensers in the tablet col- lecting tray.
	The lid of the detergent dis- penser is blocked by the tab and will not open.	•	Position the tab in the detergent dis- penser crosswise, not vertically.
	Tabs are used in the quick or short programme. Dissolv- ing time of the tab is not at- tained.	•	Select a more intensive "Pro- gramme" → <i>Page 17</i> or use "Powder detergent" → <i>Page 26.</i>
	Washing effect and dissolv- ing performance are re- duced after a prolonged storage time or detergent is very lumpy.	•	Change your "detergent" → <i>Page 26.</i>
Water marks on plastic parts.	Due to laws of physics droplet formation on plastic surfaces is unavoidable.	•	Select a more intensive pro- gramme. → "Programmes", Page 17
	After drying water marks are visible.	•	Position tableware at an angle. → "Arrange tableware", Page 30
		▶ .	Use rinse aid. → <i>"Rinse aid", Page 25</i>
		•	Set the water softening system higher.
Wipeable or water-soluble coatings are present inside the appliance or on the door.	Detergent substances are deposited there. These coat- ings cannot generally be re- moved with chemicals.	▶ .	Change your "detergent" → <i>Page 26.</i>
		►	Clean the appliance mechanically.
	White coating is deposited in the appliance interior.	1.	Set the water softening system cor- rectly.
			In most cases you will need to in- crease the setting.
		2.	
	Special salt dispenser is not screwed tight.	•	Screw the special salt dispenser tight.

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Stubborn white coatings are present on tableware, inside the appliance or the door	Detergent substances are deposited there. These coat- ings cannot generally be re-	 Change your "detergent" → Page 26.
	moved with chemicals.	 Clean the appliance mechanically.
	The hardness range is set in- correctly or the water hard- ness is greater than 44 °E (6,2 mmol/l).	 Set the Water softening system to the water hardness or add special salt.
	3in1/organic/eco detergent is not effective enough.	 Set the Water softening system to the water hardness and use separ- ate detergents (proprietary deter- gent, special salt, rinse aid).
	Too little detergent is being used.	 Increase the amount of detergent used or change "Detergent " → Page 26.
	Washing programme selec- ted too weak.	 Select a more intensive washing programme. → "Programmes", Page 17
Tea residue or lipstick marks on tableware.	Washing temperature is too low.	 Select a programme with a higher washing temperature. → "Programmes", Page 17
	Too little detergent is being used or is unsuitable.	 Use a suitable "Detergent " → Page 26 and follow the manufac- turer's instructions for the amount to be used.
	Tableware has been pre- cleaned too intensely. The sensors chose a weaker pro- gramme. Stubborn soiling cannot be entirely removed.	 Only remove large remnants of food and do not prerinse tableware.
Coloured coatings (blue, yel- low, brown) that are difficult or impossible to remove are present inside the appliance or on stainless steel table- ware.	The formation of films is due to substances contained in vegetables (cabbage, celery, potatoes, noodles, etc.) or tap water (manganese).	Clean the appliance. You can remove deposits with "Mechanical cleaning" → Page 34 or a machine cleaning product. It may not always be possible to com- pletely remove deposits but they are harmless to health.
	The formation of films is due to metal components on sil- ver or aluminium tableware.	 Clean the appliance. You can remove deposits with "Mechanical cleaning" → Page 34 or a machine cleaning product. It

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Coloured coatings (blue, yel- low, brown) that are difficult or impossible to remove are present inside the appliance or on stainless steel table- ware.		may not always be possible to com- pletely remove deposits but they are harmless to health.
Coloured deposits (yellow, orange, brown) that are easy to remove are present inside the appliance (mainly at the bottom).	The formation of films is due to ingredients of food rem- nants and tap water (limes- cale) "soaplike".	 Check the setting of the water softening system. Add special salt. → "Adding special salt", Page 24 If you are using combined detergents (tabs), activate the water softening system. Follow the information about detergents. → "Information on detergents", Page 28
Plastic parts inside the appli- ance are discoloured.	Plastic parts inside the appli- ance may become discol- oured during the life of the dishwasher.	 Discolouration can come about and will not impair functioning of the ap- pliance.
Plastic parts are discol- oured.	Washing temperature is too low.	 Select a programme with a higher washing temperature. → "Programmes", Page 17
	Tableware has been pre- cleaned too intensely. The sensors chose a weaker pro- gramme. Stubborn soiling cannot be entirely removed.	 Only remove large remnants of food and do not prerinse tableware.
Removable streaks are present on glasses, glass-	Amount of rinse aid to be dispensed is set too high.	 Set the rinse aid system to a lower setting.
ware with a metallic appear- ance and cutlery.	No rinse aid has been ad- ded.	► → "Adding rinse aid", Page 25
	Detergent residue is present in the final rinse. Lid of the detergent dispenser is blocked by tableware items and will not open fully	 Arrange tableware in the top basket tableware so the tab collecting tray is not obstructed by tableware. → "Arrange tableware", Page 30
	and will not open fully.	Items of tableware are blocking the dispenser lid.
		2 Do not place tableware or fra- grance dispensers in the tablet col- lecting tray.

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Removable streaks are present on glasses, glass- ware with a metallic appear- ance and cutlery.	Tableware has been pre- cleaned too intensely. The sensors chose a weaker pro- gramme. Stubborn soiling cannot be entirely removed.	 Only remove large remnants of food and do not prerinse tableware.
Irreversible clouding of	Glasses are not dishwasher-	 Use dishwasher-proof glasses.
glassware.	proof, only suitable for dish- washers.	Glasses are usually only suitable for use in a dishwasher, i.e. long-term wear or long-term changes must be expected.
		 Avoid a lengthy steam phase (standing time after wash cycle ends).
		 Use a programme with a lower temperature. → "Programmes", Page 17
		• Set the softening system to the water hardness.
		 Use detergent with a glass protec- tion component.
Rust spots on cutlery.	Cutlery is not sufficiently rust-resistant. Knife blades are often more severely af- fected.	 Use rust-resistant tableware.
	Cutlery may also rust if washed together with rust- ing items.	 Do not wash rusting items.
	Salt content in washing wa-	1. Remove any spilled special salt
	ter is too nign.	 Screw the cap of the special salt dispenser on tight.
Detergent residue is present in the detergent dispenser or the tablet collecting tray.	Spray arms were blocked by tableware so detergent was not rinsed out.	 Check that the spray arms are not blocked and can rotate freely.
	Detergent dispenser was damp when detergent was added.	 Only add detergent to a detergent dispenser when dry.
Excessive formation of foam occurs.	Hand washing-up liquid is present in dispenser for rinse aid.	 Immediately add rinse aid to the dispenser. → "Adding rinse aid", Page 25
	Rinse aid has been spilled.	► Remove the rinse aid with a cloth.

en Troubleshooting

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Excessive formation of foam occurs.	Detergent or appliance care product used causes excess- ive foaming.	 Change the brand of detergent.

Information on display panel

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Special salt refill indicator lights up.	Insufficient special salt.	• Add "Special salt" \rightarrow Page 24.
	Sensor does not detect spe- cial salt tablets.	• Do not use special salt tablets.
Refill indicator for special salt does not light up.	Water softening system is switched off.	 Setting the water softening system
Refill indicator for rinse aid lights up.	Insufficient rinse aid.	 Add "Rinse aid" → Page 25. Set the amount of rinse aid to be dispensed. → "Setting the amount of rinse aid", Page 26
Refill indicator for rinse aid does not light up.	Rinse aid system is switched off.	 Set the amount of rinse aid to be dispensed.

Malfunctions

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Water is left in the appliance at the end of the pro- gramme.	Filter system or area under the filters is blocked.	 Clean the "Filters" → Page 36. Clean the "Wastewater pump" → Page 49.
	Programme has not yet ended.	► Wait until the programme ends or cancel the programme with Reset .
		 → "Terminate programme", Page 32
Appliance cannot be switched on or operated.	Appliance functions have failed.	1. Pull out the mains plug or switch off the fuse.
		2. Wait at least 2 minutes.
		3. Connect the appliance to the power supply.
		4. Switch the appliance on.
Appliance does not start.	The mains fuse has tripped.	 Check the relevant fuse.
	Mains cable is not inserted.	 Check whether the socket works. Check whether the mains cable is properly inserted in the socket and on the rear of the appliance.

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Appliance does not start.	Appliance door is not closed properly.	► Close the appliance door.
Programme starts automat- ically.	You did not wait until pro- gramme ended.	 → "Terminate programme", Page 32
Appliance stops during the programme or cuts out.	Appliance door is not closed properly.	► Close the appliance door.
	Power and/or water supply has been interrupted.	 Check the power supply. Check the water supply.
	Top basket is pressing against inner door and pre- venting appliance door from being closed securely.	 Check whether the rear panel of the appliance is being pressed in by a socket or hose holder that has not been removed.
		 Arrange the tableware so that no parts project beyond the basket and prevent the appliance door from closing properly.

Mechanical damage

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Appliance door cannot be closed.	Door lock has been activ- ated.	 Close the appliance door with greater force.
	Door cannot be closed due to installation method.	 Check whether the appliance has been installed properly.
		When closed, the appliance door, its decor or attached parts should not knock against adjacent cabin- ets or the worktop.
Lid on the detergent dispenser cannot be closed.	Detergent dispenser or lid are blocked by sticky deter- gent residue.	 Remove detergent residue.

Noise

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Filling valves making knock- ing noises.	Caused by the domestic in- stallation. No appliance fault present. Does not affect functioning of the appliance.	 Can only be remedied in the do- mestic installation.
Knocking or rattling noise.	Spray arm is striking table- ware.	• Arrange tableware so that the spray arms do not strike tableware.

en Troubleshooting

Fault	Cause	Troubleshooting
Knocking or rattling noise.	With a small load the water jets directly strike against the tub.	 Distribute the tableware evenly.
		• Load the appliance with more table- ware.
	Light items of tableware move about during the wash cycle.	 Position light items of tableware se- curely.

Clean wastewater pump

Large remnants of food or foreign bodies can block the waste water pump. As soon as the rinsing water no longer drains properly, the waste water pump must be cleaned.

A WARNING Risk of injury!

Sharp and pointed objects or fragments of glass may block the waste water pump and cause injury.

- Remove any foreign bodies carefully.
- 1. Disconnect the appliance from the power supply.
- 2. Remove the top and bottom basket.
- 3. Remove the filter system.
- **4.** Scoop out any water. Use a sponge if necessary.
- 5. Prise off the pump cover using a spoon and grip it by the crosspiece.



- 6. Lift the pump cover inwards at an angle and remove.
- **7.** Remove any remnants of food and foreign bodies in the area of the impeller.

8. Insert the pump cover ① and press down ②.



- The pump cover clicks into position.
- 9. Install the filter system.
- 10. Insert the top and bottom basket.

Transportation, storage and disposal

You can find out here how to prepare your appliance for transportation and storage. You will also find out how to dispose of old appliances.

Removing the appliance

- 1. Disconnect the appliance from the mains power supply.
- 2. Turn off the water tap.
- 3. Detach the drainage connection.
- 4. Detach the drinking water connection.
- **5.** Loosen any screws fastening the appliance to cabinet parts.
- 6. Remove the base panel if fitted.
- 7. Pull the appliance out carefully, along with the hose behind it.

Protect appliance from frost

If there is a risk of frost where the appliance will be standing, e.g. in a holiday home, empty the appliance completely.

 Empty the appliance.
 → "Transporting the appliance", Page 50

Transporting the appliance

To avoid damage to the appliance, empty it before transporting.

Note: Always transport the dishwasher upright to prevent residual water getting into the machine's controls and damaging the appliance.

- 1. Remove tableware from the appliance.
- 2. Secure loose parts.
- **3.** "Switch on the appliance." \rightarrow Page 31
- Select the programme with the highest temperature.
 → "Programmes", Page 17
- 5. "Start the programme." \rightarrow Page 32
- To drain the appliance, terminate the programme after approx. 4 minutes.

→ "Terminate programme", Page 32

- 7. "Switch off the appliance." → Page 32
- 8. Turn off the water tap.
- **9.** To empty the residual water out of the appliance, detach the supply hose and let the water drain out.

Disposing of old appliance

Valuable raw materials can be reused by recycling.

WARNING Risk of harm to health!

Children can lock themselves in the appliance, thereby putting their lives at risk.

- With redundant appliances, unplug the power cord. Then cut through the cord and damage the lock on the appliance door beyond repair so that the appliance door will no longer close.
- 1. Unplug the appliance from the mains.
- 2. Cut through the power cord.
- 3. Dispose of the appliance in an environmentally friendly manner. Information about current disposal

methods are available from your specialist dealer or local authority.



This appliance is labelled in accordance with European Directive 2012/19/EU concerning used electrical and electronic appliances (waste electrical and electronic equipment - WEEE). The guideline determines the framework for the return and recycling of used appliances as applicable throughout the EU.

Customer Service

If you have any queries, are unable to rectify faults on the appliance yourself or if your appliance needs to be repaired, contact Customer Service. Function-relevant genuine spare parts according to the corresponding Ecodesign Order can be obtained from Customer Service for a period of at least 10 years from the date on which your appliance was placed on the market within the European Economic Area.

Note: Under the terms of the manufacturer's warranty the use of Customer Service is free of charge.

Detailed information on the warranty period and terms of warranty in your country is available from our aftersales service, your retailer or on our website.

If you contact Customer Service, you will require the product number (E-Nr.), the production number (FD) and the consecutive numbering (Z-Nr.) of your appliance.

The contact details for Customer Service can be found in the enclosed Customer Service directory or on our website.

Product number (E-Nr.), production number (FD) and consecutive numbering (Z-Nr.)

You can find the product number (E-Nr.), the production number (FD) and the consecutive numbering (Z-Nr.) on the appliance's rating plate.

The rating plate is located inside the appliance door.

Make a note of your appliance's details and the Customer Service telephone number to find them again quickly.

AQUA-STOP guarantee

In addition to warranty claims against the seller under the purchase agreement and in addition to our manufacturer's warranty, we offer compensation under the following conditions.

 If our Aqua-Stop system is defective and causes water damage, we will make good the damage for private users. To ensure protection from water damage, the appliance must be connected to the power supply.

- The liability guarantee is valid for the service life of the appliance.
- A claim can only be made under the guarantee if the appliance has been correctly installed and connected with Aqua-Stop according to our instructions; this also includes correctly fitting the Aqua-Stop extension (genuine accessory). Our guarantee does not cover defective supply lines or fittings up to the Aqua-Stop connection on the tap.
- If your appliance is fitted with Aqua-Stop, you can in principle leave your appliance unattended during operation and the tap turned on afterwards. The tap only needs to be turned off if you are away from home for a long period, e.g. on holiday for several weeks.

Weight Max.: 45 kg Voltage 220 - 240 V, 50 Hz or 60 Hz 2000 - 2400 W Power rating Fuse 10-16A Min. 0.05 MPa Water pressure (0.5 bar) Max. 1 MPa (10 bar) Inlet rate Min. 10 I/min Water temperature Cold water. Hot water max.: 60 °C Capacity 9 place settings

Technical specifications

You can find more information about your model online at https:// eprel.ec.europa.eu/¹. This web address is linked to the official EU EPREL product database. Please then follow the instructions on searching for models. The model identifier is made up of the characters before the slash in the product number (E-Nr.) on the rating plate. Alternatively, you can also find the model identifier in the first line of the EU energy label.

Information regarding Free and Open Source Software

This product includes software components that are licensed by the copyright holders as free or open source software.

The applicable licence information is stored on your home appliance. You can also access the applicable licence information via your Home Connect app: "Profile -> Legal information -> Licence Information".² You can download the licence information on the brand product website. (Please search on the product website for your appliance model and additional documents). Alternatively. you can request the relevant information from ossrequest@bshg.com or BSH Hausgeräte GmbH, Carl-Wery-Str. 34, 81739 Munich, Germany. The source code will be made available to you on request. Please send your request to ossrequest@bshg.com or BSH Hausgeräte GmbH, Carl-Wery-Str.34, 81739 Munich, Germany. Subject: "OSSREQUEST"

The cost of performing your request will be charged to you. This offer is valid for three years from the date of purchase or at least as long as we offer support and spare parts for the respective appliance.

¹ Only applies to countries in the European Economic Area

² Depending on the appliance specifications



Thank you for buying a Bosch Home Appliance!

Register your new device on MyBosch now and profit directly from:

- Expert tips & tricks for your appliance
- Warranty extension options
- Discounts for accessories & spare-parts
- Digital manual and all appliance data at hand
- Easy access to Bosch Home Appliances Service

Free and easy registration – also on mobile phones: **www.bosch-home.com/welcome**

BOSCH HOME APPLIANCES SERVICE

Looking for help? You'll find it here.

Expert advice for your Bosch home appliances, help with problems or a repair from Bosch experts.

Find out everything about the many ways Bosch can support you: **www.bosch-home.com/service**

Contact data of all countries are listed in the attached service directory.

Robert Bosch Hausgeräte GmbH

Carl-Wery-Straße 34 81739 München GERMANY www.bosch-home.com



Valid within Great Britain: Imported to Great Britain by BSH Home Appliances Ltd. Grand Union House Old Wolverton Road Wolverton, Milton Keynes MK12 5PT United Kingdom

Dishwasher User Manual (60cm)



Register your new device on MyBosch now and get free benefits: bosch-home.com/ welcome



Dishwasher

SM... SB... SG...

[en] Information for Use

Table of contents

 Safety 1.1 General information 1.2 Intended use 1.3 Restriction on user group 1.4 Safe installation 1.5 Safe use 1.6 Damaged appliance 1.7 Risk to children 1.8 Safety systems 	• 4 • 4 • 4 • 4 • 6 • 8 • 8 • 8 • 9
2 Preventing material damage 2.1 Safe installation 2.2 Safe use	10 10 10
3 Childproof lock ¹ 3.1 Door lock	11 11
 4 Environmental protection and saving energy 4.1 Disposing of packaging 4.2 Saving energy 4.3 AquaSensor¹ 	12 12 12 12
 5 Installation and connection 5.1 Scope of supply 5.2 Installing and connecting the appliance 5.3 Drainage connection 5.4 Drinking water connection 5.5 Electrical connection 	12 12 13 13 13 14
 6 Familiarising yourself with your appliance 6.1 Appliance 6.2 Controls 	15 15 17
7 Programmes 7.1 Information for test institutes	18 20
8 Additional functions	20

4 4 4 4 4 6 8 9 0	 9 Features	21 23 23 24 25 25 26
0	10 Before using for the first time	27
) 1	10.1 Performing the initial con- figuration	27
I	11 Water softening system	27
2	11.1 Overview of water hardness settings	27
2 2 2	11.2 Setting water softening sys- tem	28 28
2	11.4 Switching off water soften- ing system11.5 Begeneration of the water	29
З	softening system	29
3 3 4	12 Rinse aid system 12.1 Rinse aid 12.2 Setting the amount of rinse	30 30
I	aid	30
5	off	31
7 18 20 20	 13 Detergent 13.1 Suitable detergents 13.2 Unsuitable detergents 13.3 Information on detergents 13.4 Adding detergent 	31 32 32 33

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

14 Tableware	33
14.1 Damage to glass and table- ware14.2 Arrange tableware14.3 Removing tableware	34 34 35
 15 Basic operation 15.1 Opening appliance door 15.2 Switching on the appliance 15.3 Setting a programme 15.4 Setting additional functions 15.5 Setting timer programming¹ 15.6 Starting the programme 15.7 Interrupting programme 15.8 Terminate programme 15.9 Switching off appliance 	35 36 36 36 36 37 37 37 37
16 Basic settings 16.1 Overview of basic settings	38 38
 17 Cleaning and servicing 17.1 Cleaning the tub 17.2 Self-cleaning interior¹ 17.3 Cleaning products 17.4 Tips on appliance care 17.5 Filter system 17.6 Cleaning spray arms 	39 39 39 39 39 40 41
18 Troubleshooting 18.1 Clean wastewater pump	42 53
 19 Transportation, storage and disposal 19.1 Removing the appliance 19.2 Protect appliance from frost 19.3 Transporting the appliance 19.4 Disposing of old appliance 	53 53 53 54 54
 20 Customer Service 20.1 Product number (E-Nr.) and production number (FD) 20.2 AQUA-STOP guarantee¹ 	54 55 55
21 Technical specifications	56

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

1 Safety

Observe the following safety instructions.

1.1 General information

- Read this instruction manual carefully.
- Keep the instruction manual and the product information safe for future reference or for the next owner.
- Do not connect the appliance if it has been damaged in transit.

1.2 Intended use

Only use this appliance:

- For cleaning household tableware.
- In private households and in enclosed spaces in a domestic environment.
- Up to an altitude of 4000 m above sea level.

1.3 Restriction on user group

This appliance may be used by children aged 8 or over and by people who have reduced physical, sensory or mental abilities or inadequate experience and/or knowledge, provided that they are supervised or have been instructed on how to use the appliance safely and have understood the resulting dangers.

Do not let children play with the appliance.

Cleaning and user maintenance must not be performed by children unless they are being supervised.

Keep children under the age of 8 years away from the appliance and power cable.

1.4 Safe installation

▲ WARNING – Risk of injury!

Improper installation may cause injury.

When installing and connecting the appliance, follow the instructions in the manual and installation instructions.

▲ WARNING – Risk of electric shock!

Incorrect installation is dangerous.

- Connect and operate the appliance only in accordance with the specifications on the rating plate.
- ► Always use the supplied power cable for the new appliance.
- Connect the appliance to a power supply with alternating current only via a properly installed socket with earthing.
- The protective conductor system of the domestic electrical installation must be properly installed.
- Never equip the appliance with an external switching device, e.g. a timer or remote control.
- When the appliance is installed, the mains plug of the power cord must be freely accessible. If free access is not possible, an all-pole isolating switch must be installed in the permanent electrical installation according to the installation regulations.
- When installing the appliance, check that the power cable is not trapped or damaged.

Cutting through the supply hose or immersing the Aqua-Stop valve in water is dangerous.

- Never immerse the plastic housing in water. The plastic housing on the supply hose contains an electric valve.
- Never cut through the supply hose. The supply hose contains electric power cables.

▲ WARNING – Risk of fire!

It is dangerous to use an extended power cord and non-approved adapters.

- ► Do not use extension cables or multiple socket strips.
- ► If the power cord is too short, contact Customer Service.
- Only use adapters approved by the manufacturer.

▲ WARNING – Risk of injury!

Hinges move when opening and closing the appliance door and can cause injury.

If built-under or integrable appliances are not in a cavity so that one side is accessible, the hinge area must be covered at the side. Covers are available from Customer Service or specialist outlets.

▲ WARNING – Risk of tipping!

Improper installation may cause the appliance to tip up.

Only install built-under or integrable appliances under a continuous worktop that is securely connected to adjacent cabinets.

▲ WARNING – Risk of burns!

If the appliance is not installed properly, this may result in burns.

► With free-standing appliances, ensure that they are installed with the back panel against a wall.

1.5 Safe use

▲ WARNING – Risk of serious harm to health!

Failure to comply with safety instructions and directions for use on packagings of detergent and rinse aid products may cause serious harm to health.

Follow the safety instructions and directions for use on the packagings of detergent and rinse aid products.

▲ WARNING – Risk of explosion!

Adding solvents to the interior of the appliance may cause explosions.

► Never add solvents to the interior of the appliance.

Highly caustic alkaline or highly acidic cleaning agents in conjunction with aluminium parts in the interior of the appliance may cause explosions.

Never use highly caustic alkaline or highly acidic cleaning agents, in particular commercial or industrial products, in conjunction with aluminium parts (e.g. grease filters of extractor hoods or aluminium pans), e.g. for the Machine Care programme.

▲ WARNING – Risk of injury!

Leaving the appliance door open may result in injury.

- Only open the appliance door to load or unload tableware in order to prevent accidents, e.g. through tripping.
- ► Do not sit or stand on the appliance door when open.

Knives and utensils with sharp points can cause injuries.

Arrange knives and utensils with sharp points in the cutlery basket with the points downwards, on the knife shelf or in the cutlery drawer.

▲ WARNING – Risk of scalding!

If you open the appliance door while the programme is running, hot water may splash out of the appliance.

 Open the appliance door carefully if the programme is still running.

▲ WARNING – Risk of tipping!

Overfilling the Baskets may cause the appliance to tip up.Never overfill the Baskets with free-standing appliances.

▲ WARNING – Risk of electric shock!

An ingress of moisture can cause an electric shock.

- ► Only use the appliance in enclosed spaces.
- ► Never expose the appliance to intense heat or humidity.
- Do not use steam- or high-pressure cleaners to clean the appliance.

If the insulation of the power cord is damaged, this is dangerous.

Never let the power cord come into contact with hot appliance parts or heat sources.

```
en Safety
```

- Never let the power cord come into contact with sharp points or edges.
- ► Never kink, crush or modify the power cord.

1.6 Damaged appliance

▲ WARNING – Risk of electric shock!

If the appliance or the power cord is damaged, this is dangerous.

- ► Never operate a damaged appliance.
- ► Never operate an appliance with a cracked or fractured surface.
- Never pull on the power cord to unplug the appliance. Always unplug the appliance at the mains.
- If the appliance or the power cord is damaged, immediately unplug the power cord or switch off the fuse in the fuse box and turn off the water tap.
- ► Call customer services. → Page 54

Incorrect repairs are dangerous.

- Repairs to the appliance should only be carried out by trained specialist staff.
- ► Only use genuine spare parts when repairing the appliance.
- If the power cord of this appliance is damaged, it must be replaced with a special connection cable, which is available from the manufacturer or his Customer Service.

1.7 Risk to children

▲ WARNING – Risk of suffocation!

Children may put packaging material over their heads or wrap themselves up in it and suffocate.

- ► Keep packaging material away from children.
- Do not let children play with packaging material.

Children may breathe in or swallow small parts, causing them to suffocate.

- ► Keep small parts away from children.
- ► Do not let children play with small parts.

Children may become trapped in the appliance and suffocate.

- Use the childproof lock if fitted.
- ► Never let children play with or operate the appliance.

MARNING – Risk of harm to health!

Children can lock themselves in the appliance, thereby putting their lives at risk.

With redundant appliances, unplug the power cord. Then cut through the cord and damage the lock on the appliance door beyond repair so that the appliance door will no longer close.

▲ WARNING – Risk of crushing!

With higher-level appliances, children can become crushed between the appliance door and cabinet doors underneath.

Keep an eye on children when opening and closing the appliance door.

MARNING – Risk of chemical burns!

Rinse aid and detergent may cause chemical burns to the mouth, throat and eyes.

- ► Keep children away from detergent and rinse aid products.
- Keep children away from the appliance when open. The water in the interior of the dishwasher is not drinking water. It may contain residues of detergents and rinse aid.

▲ WARNING – Risk of injury!

Children may get their fingers caught in the slots of the tablet collecting tray and injure themselves.

► Keep children away from the appliance when open.

1.8 Safety systems

Protect children from possible hazards resulting from the appliance.

Depending on the features of the model, the appliance comes with a

→ "Childproof lock", Page 11.

2 Preventing material damage

2.1 Safe installation

ATTENTION!

Improper installation of the appliance may cause damage.

- If the dishwasher is installed above or below other domestic appliances, follow the information on installation in combination with a dishwasher in the installation instructions for the individual appliances.
- If there is no information or if the installation instructions do not include the relevant information, contact the manufacturer of these appliances to check that the dishwasher can be installed above or below these appliances.
- If no information is available from the manufacturer, the dishwasher should not be installed above or below such appliances.
- To ensure the safe operation of all domestic appliances, continue following the installation instructions for the dishwasher.
- Do not install the dishwasher under a hob.
- Do not install the dishwasher near heat sources, e.g. radiators, heat storage tanks, ovens or other appliances that generate heat.

Modified or damaged water hoses may result in material damage and damage to the appliance.

- Never kink, crush, modify or cut through water hoses.
- Only use the water hoses supplied with the appliance or genuine spare hoses.
- Never re-use water hoses that have been used before.

If the water pressure is too high or too low, the appliance may not be able to operate properly.

- Make sure that the water pressure in the water supply system is min. 50 kPa (0.5 bar) and max. 1000 kPa (10 bar).
- If the water pressure exceeds the maximum value specified, a pressure-reducing valve must be installed between the drinking water connection and the hose set of the appliance.

2.2 Safe use

ATTENTION!

Escaping water vapour can damage fitted units.

When the programme ends, leave the appliance to cool down for a while before opening the door.

Special salt for dishwashers can damage the tub due to corrosion.

 To make sure that any special salt that escapes is washed out of the tub, add the special salt to the dispenser for special salt immediately before the programme starts.

Detergent may damage the water softening system.

 Only fill the dispenser of the water softening system with special dishwasher salt.

Unsuitable cleaning agents may damage the appliance.

- Do not use a steam cleaner.
- So as not to scratch the finish on the appliance, do not use sponges with a rough surface or abrasive cleaning agents.
- To prevent corrosion, do not use sponge cloths on dishwashers with a stainless steel front or rinse such cloths thoroughly several times before using them for the first time.

3 Childproof lock¹

The childproof lock lets you protect children from possible hazards resulting from the appliance.

Depending on the features of the model, the appliance comes with a door lock.

3.1 Door lock

The door lock is a mechanical safety system and makes it more difficult to open the appliance door.

You can activate or deactivate the door lock.

WARNING Risk of suffocation!

Children may become trapped in the appliance and thus suffocate.

 Activate the door lock and close the appliance door.

→ "Opening appliance door", Page 35

Activating the door lock

Note: The door lock remains activated until it is deactivated manually.

1. Open the appliance door.

2. Pull the catch of the childproof lock forwards ① and close the appliance door ②.



Deactivating the door lock

- 1. Open the appliance door.
- 2. Push the catch of the childproof lock to the right ① and slide it backwards ②.



3. Close the appliance door.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

4 Environmental protection and saving energy

Help protect the environment by using your appliance in a way that conserves resources and by disposing of reusable materials properly.

4.1 Disposing of packaging

The packaging materials are environmentally compatible and can be recycled.

 Sort the individual components by type and dispose of them separately.

Information about current disposal methods are available from your specialist dealer or local authority.

4.2 Saving energy

If you follow these instructions, your appliance will use less electricity and less water.

Use the Eco 50 $^\circ$ programme.

- The Eco 50° programme is energy efficient and environmentally friendly.
 - → "Programmes", Page 18

If you do not have much tableware to wash, use the additional Half Load function.¹

- The programme will adjust to a lower load and consumption will be reduced.
 - → "Additional functions", Page 20

4.3 AquaSensor¹

The AquaSensor is an optical measuring device (light barrier) which measures the turbidity of the washing water. You can save water with the AquaSensor.

Use of the AquaSensor depends on the programme. If the soiling level is low, the washing water is used in the next wash cycle, so reducing water consumption by 3-6 litres. If the soiling level is is greater, the washing water is drained off and replaced with fresh water. In the automatic programmes the temperature and running time are additionally adjusted to the level of soiling.

5 Installation and connection

To ensure proper operation, connect the appliance to the power and water supply correctly. Observe the specified criteria and the installation instructions.

5.1 Scope of supply

After unpacking all parts, check for any damage in transit and completeness of the delivery.

If you have any complaints, contact the dealer who sold you the appliance or our Customer Service.

Note: The appliance has been tested at the factory to check it is in working order. It is possible that water has left marks on the appliance. These marks will disappear after the first wash cycle.

The delivery consists of the following: Dishwasher

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

- User manual
- Installation Instructions
- Warranty¹
- Installation material
- Steam guard plate¹
- Rubber apron¹
- Mains cable
- Quick reference guide¹

5.2 Installing and connecting the appliance

You can position your built-under or integrable appliance in a fitted kitchen between wooden and plastic walls. If you subsequently install your dishwasher as a free-standing appliance, you must stop it from tipping over, e.g. by screwing it to the wall or installing it under a continuous worktop that is securely connected to adjacent cabinets.

- **1.** Follow the safety instructions. \rightarrow Page 4
- 2. Follow the instructions for electrical connection. → Page 14
- Check the Scope of supply
 → Page 12 and the condition of
 the appliance.
- 4. Consult the installation instructions for the installation dimensions required.
- Make the appliance level using the height-adjustable feet.

Make sure that the appliance is standing on the floor securely.

- **6.** Install the drainage connection. \rightarrow *Page 13*
- Install the drinking water connection. → Page 13
- 8. Connect the appliance to the power supply.

5.3 Drainage connection

Connect your appliance to drainage connection so dirty water is discharged via the wash cycle.

Installing the drainage connection

- 1. Consult the installation instructions supplied for the steps required here.
- 2 Connect the wastewater hose to the outlet connection of the siphon using the enclosed parts.
- When doing so, check that the wastewater hose is not kinked, crushed or twisted.
- Also check that there is no cover in the drainage system preventing the wastewater from being discharged.

5.4 Drinking water connection

Connect your appliance to a drinking water connection.

Installing the drinking water connection

Note

- If you are replacing the appliance, you must use a new water supply hose.
- 1. Consult the installation instructions supplied for the steps required here.
- 2. Connect the appliance to the drinking water connection using the enclosed parts.

Observe the Technical data \rightarrow Page 56.

3. When doing so, check that the drinking water connection is not kinked, crushed or twisted.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

5.5 Electrical connection

Connect your appliance to the power supply.

Connecting the appliance to the electricity supply

Notes

- Please follow the Safety instructions → Page 4.
- Connect the appliance to alternating current only, in the range of 220 - 240 V and 50 Hz or 60 Hz.
- Please note that the water safety system is only functional if there is a power supply.
- 1. Insert the non-heating appliance plug of the power cable into the appliance.
- 2. Insert the mains plug of the appliance into a nearby socket.

The connection data for the appliance can be found on the rating plate.

3. Check that the mains plug is inserted properly.

6 Familiarising yourself with your appliance

6.1 Appliance

You can find an overview of the parts of your appliance here.



ber \rightarrow Page 55. The data you need for Customer Service \rightarrow Page 54.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications
2	Detergent dispenser	Detergent \rightarrow Page 31 is added to the detergent dispenser.
3	Bottom basket	Bottom basket → Page 23
4	Dispenser for special salt	Add special salt for the Water softening system \rightarrow Page 27 to the dispenser for special salt.
5	Lower spray arm	The lower spray arm washes the table- ware in the bottom basket. If the tableware has not been washed properly, clean the spray arms. → "Cleaning spray arms", Page 41
6	Tablet collecting tray	During the wash cycle tablets automatic- ally fall out of the detergent dispenser into the tablet collecting tray where they can fully dissolve.
7	Top basket	Top basket → <i>Page 21</i>
8	Cutlery drawer ¹	Cutlery drawer → Page 23
9	EmotionLight ¹	Interior lighting of the appliance. → "Overview of basic settings", Page 38
10	Etagere	Etagere → Page 24
11	Upper spray arm	The upper spray arm washes the table- ware in the top basket. If the tableware has not been washed properly, clean the spray arms. → "Cleaning spray arms", Page 41
12	Filter system	Filter system → Page 40
13	Cutlery basket ¹	Cutlery basket → Page 23
14	Dispenser for rinse aid	Add rinse aid for the Rinse aid system \rightarrow Page 30 to the dispenser for rinse aid.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

6.2 Controls

The controls are used to configure all functions of your appliance and to obtain information about the operating status.

With some buttons you can perform different functions.



¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

7 Programmes

You can find an overview of the programmes that can be selected here. Different programmes, which can be found on the control panel of your appliance, are available depending on the appliance configuration. The running time may vary depending on the programme selected. The running time depends on the water temperature, the quantity of tableware, the level of soiling and the Additional function $\rightarrow Page 20$ selected. The runtime will change if the rinse aid system is switched off or rinse aid needs to be added. The consumption values can be found in the quick reference guide. The consumption values relate to normal conditions and a water hardness of 9 - 20 °E. Different influencing factors such as water temperature or pipe pressure may result in deviations.

Programme	Use	Programme se- quence	Additional func- tions
ற் ற் Intensive 70°	 Tableware: Washing pots and pans, non- fragile table- ware and cut- lery. Level of soiling: Removing stub- born burned or dried-on food remnants con- taining starch and protein. 	Intensive: PreRinse Cleaning 70 °C Intermediate rinse Rinsing 69 °C Drying	All → "Additional func- tions", Page 20
	When using powder detergent, you can also ap- ply a little to the inside of the appli- ance door.		
IJ IJ Mix 65°	 Tableware: Cleaning mixed tableware and cutlery. Level of soiling: Removing common household food remnants normally to firmly dried-on. 	Intensive: Pre Rinse Cleaning 65 °C Intermediate rinse Rinsing 69 °C Drying	All → "Additional func- tions", Page 20

Programme	Use	Programme se- quence	Additional func- tions
есо <u>भ</u> ु Есо 50°	 Tableware: Cleaning mixed tableware and cutlery. Level of soiling: Removing common household food remnants lightly dried-on. 	Most economical programme: Pre-Rinse Cleaning 50 °C Intermediate rinse Rinsing 66 °C Drying	All → "Additional func- tions", Page 20
₽ Delicate 40°	 Tableware: Cleaning delicate tableware, cutlery, temperature-sensitive plastics, glasses and stemware in the stemware basket. Level of soiling: Removing lightly adhering fresh food remnants. 	Gentle: PreRinse Cleaning 40 °C Intermediate rinse Rinsing 60 °C Drying	IntensiveZone VarioSpeed Half Load ExtraDry → "Additional func- tions", Page 20
ŷ <u>F</u> ⊡ _₽ Quick 45°	 Tableware: Cleaning delicate tableware, cutlery, temperature-sensitive plastics and glasses. Level of soiling: Removing lightly adhering fresh food remnants. 	 Time-optimised: Cleaning 45 °C Intermediate rinse Rinsing 55 °C 	ExtraDry → "Additional func- tions", Page 20
们》 个 M PreRinse	 Tableware: Cleaning all types of table- ware. Level of soiling: Cold rinsing, in- termediate cleaning. 	Cold rinse suit- able: Pre-Rinse	None

7.1 Information for test institutes

Test institutes are provided with information for comparability tests, e.g. according to EN60436.

These are the conditions for conducting the tests, however they are not the results or consumption values. E-mail enquiries to: dishwasher@testappliances.com

The product number (E-Nr.) and the production number (FD) are required here. They can be found on the rating plate on the appliance door.

8 Additional functions

You can find an overview of the additional functions that can be selected here. Different additional functions, which can be found on the control panel of your appliance, are available depending on the appliance configuration.

Additional function	Use
C) VarioSpeed	 The running time is shortened by 20% to 50% de- pending on the washing pro- gramme. Energy and water consumption are increased.

Additional function	Use
Half Load	 Switch on with small loads. It is recommended adding less deter- gent to the deter- gent dispenser than for a full ma- chine load. The running time is shortened. Energy and water consumption are reduced.
ម្តី Hygiene	 To ensure a higher hygiene status for the ap- pliance and table- ware, the temper- ature is raised and maintained for an extra-lengthy period. Especially suitable for cleaning chop- ping boards or baby bottles. Continuous use of this function in- creases the hy- giene status. This will increase the running time and energy con- gumention

Additional function	Use
Intens- iveZone	 Switch on with mixed loads con- taining tableware with different soil- ing levels, e.g. place very soiled pots and pans in the bottom basket and normally soiled tableware in the top basket. The spray pres- sure in the bottom basket is in- creased and the maximum pro- gramme temperat- ure held longer. This will increase the running time and energy con- sumption.
∭+ ExtraDry	 For a better drying result the final rinse temperature is increased and the drying phase extended. Especially suitable for drying plastic parts. There is a slight increase in energy consumption and the running time is extended.

9 Features

You can find an overview of the possible features of your appliance and how to use them here.

These features depend on the model of your appliance.

9.1 Top basket

Arrange cups and glasses in the top basket.



Knife shelf a1

You can adjust the height of the top basket to make room for larger items of tableware.

Adjusting top basket with side levers

To wash large items of tableware in the baskets, adjust the shelf position of the top basket.

- 1. Pull out the top basket.
- 2. To prevent the basket from suddenly dropping down, hold the side of the basket by the top edge.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

3. Press in the levers on the right and left on the outside of the basket.



The basket can then slip down slightly.

- 4. Raise or lower the basket evenly to the right level.
 - → "Basket heights", Page 26



Check that the basket is level on both sides.

5. Slide the basket back in.

Adjusting top basket with pairs of rollers

To wash large items of tableware in the baskets, adjust the shelf position of the top basket.

1. Pull out the top basket.

2. Remove the basket.



- 3. Insert the basket at the right basket height.
 - → "Basket heights", Page 26



Check that the basket is level on both sides.

4. Slide the basket back in.

9.2 Bottom basket

Arrange pans and plates in the bottom basket.



Cutlery basket a1

Large plates up to a diameter of 31/34 cm¹ can be arranged as shown.



9.3 Cutlery basket

Arrange cutlery in the cutlery basket, always without sorting it and with the sharp points downwards.



9.4 Cutlery drawer

Arrange cutlery in the cutlery drawer.



Arrange cutlery with the points and sharp edges downwards. You can reorganise the cutlery drawer to make more space for longer/wider items of cutlery.¹

Reorganising cutlery drawer¹

You can fold down the side shelves and front prongs to make more space for longer/wider items of cutlery.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

- en Features
- To fold down a side shelf, push the lever forwards ① and fold down the side shelf ②.
- 2. To fold down the front prongs, push the lever forwards and fold down the prongs⁽³⁾.



Tip

If you want to return the cutlery drawer to the original position, fold the side shelf back up until it clicks into position.



9.5 Etagere

Use the etagere and space underneath for small cups and glasses or for large items of cutlery, e.g. wooden spoons or serving cutlery.



You can adjust the height of the etagere.¹

If you do not need the etagere, you can fold it up.

Adjusting etagere¹

You can adjust the height of the etagere.

1. Position the etagere vertically and pull it upwards ①.



- Position the etagere at a slight angle and move to the right height ②.
- 3. Push the etagere down.
- ✓ The etagere clicks into position.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

9.6 Folding prongs

Use the folding prongs to position tableware securely, e.g. plates.



You can fold the prongs down to position pans, bowls and glasses better.¹

Folding down prongs¹

If you do not need the prongs, fold them down.

1. Push the lever forwards ① and fold down the prongs ②.



- 2. To use the folding prongs again, fold them back up.
- The folding prongs click in position.

9.7 Small items holder

Use the small items holder to position small items of tableware, e.g. light plastic parts.



9.8 Knife shelf

Use the knife shelf for long, sharp objects and long items of cutlery.



¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

9.9 Basket heights

Set the baskets at the right height.

Appliance height 81.5 cm with cutlery basket

Level	Top basket	Bottom basket
1 max. ø	22 cm	31 cm
2 max. ø	24.5 cm	27.5 cm
3 max. ø	27 cm	25 cm

Appliance height 81.5 cm with cutlery drawer

Level	Top basket	Bottom basket
1 max. ø	16 cm	31 cm
2 max. ø	18.5 cm	27.5 cm
3 max. ø	21 cm	25 cm

Appliance height 86.5 cm with cutlery basket

Level	Top basket	Bottom basket
1 max. ø	24 cm	34 cm
2 max. ø	26.5 cm	30.5 cm
3 max. ø	29 cm	28 cm

Appliance height 86.5 cm with cutlery drawer

Level	Top basket	Bottom basket
1 max. ø	18 cm	34 cm
2 max. ø	20.5 cm	30.5 cm
3 max. ø	23 cm	28 cm

10 Before using for the first time

Configure the settings for initial start-up.

10.1 Performing the initial configuration

On initial start-up or after a reset to the factory settings, you will need to make settings.

Requirement: The appliance has been installed and connected. \rightarrow *Page 12*

- **1.** Add special salt. \rightarrow Page 28
- **2.** Add rinse aid. \rightarrow Page 30
- **3.** Switch on the appliance. \rightarrow *Page 36*
- Setting the water softening system.
 → Page 28
- Set the amount of rinse aid to be dispensed. → Page 30
- **6.** Add detergent \rightarrow *Page 31*.

 Start the Programme with the highest cleaning temperature without tableware.

To remove any marks from water or other residues, we recommend you operate the appliance without tableware before using it for the first time.

Tip: You can change these settings and other Basic settings \rightarrow *Page 38* at any time.

11 Water softening system

Hard water leaves limescale on the tub and tableware and parts of the appliance may become blocked. To ensure good dishwashing results, you can treat the water with special salt and the water softening system. To avoid damage to the appliance, water with a hardness above 9 °E must be softened.

11.1 Overview of water hardness settings

You can find an overview of the water hardness values that can be selected here.

You can find out how hard your water is from your local water company or by using a water hardness tester.

Water hardness value °E	Hardness range	mmol/l	Level	LED A \rightarrow Page	LED B 17 → Page	LED C 17 → Page 17
0 - 8	Soft	0 - 1.1	0	0	0	0
9 - 20	Medium	1.2 - 2.9	1	0	0	0
21 - 26	Hard	3.0 - 3.7	2	0	0	0
27 - 44	Hard	3.8 - 6.2	3	0	0	0

Note: Set the water hardness determined on your appliance.

→ "Setting water softening system", Page 28

With a water hardness of 0 - 8 °E you can dispense with special salt and switch off the water softening system.

 \rightarrow "Switching off water softening system", Page 29

11.2 Setting water softening system

Set the water hardness on your appliance.

- Determine the water hardness and the appropriate setting value.
 → "Overview of water hardness settings", Page 27
- **2.** Press ①.
- Press and hold > and Start until S and [™] flash.
- 4. Release buttons.
- < repeatedly until the required level has been selected.

0, 1, 2 or 3 LEDs will light up accordingly.

→ "Overview of water hardness settings", Page 27

The factory setting is level 1 (LED $A \rightarrow Page 17$).

- 6. Press Start to save the setting.
- ✓ The LEDs go out.

11.3 Special salt

You can use special salt to soften water.

Adding special salt

If the special salt refill indicator lights up, add special salt to the dispenser for special salt just before the programme starts. The amount of special salt required depends on the water hardness: the higher the water hardness, the greater the amount of special salt required.

ATTENTION!

Detergent may damage the water softening system.

 Only fill the dispenser of the water softening system with special dishwasher salt.

Special salt can damage the tub due to corrosion.

- To make sure that any special salt that escapes is washed out of the tub, add the special salt to the dispenser for special salt immediately before the programme starts.
- 1. Unscrew the lid of the dispenser for special salt and remove.
- 2. On initial start-up: Fill the dispenser right up with water.
- Note: Only use special salt for dishwashers. Do not use salt tablets.

Do not use table salt.

Add the special salt to the dispenser.



Funnel a1

Fill the dispenser right up with special salt. The water in the dispenser is displaced and forced out.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

4. Place the lid back on the dispenser and turn to close.

11.4 Switching off water softening system

If you find the special salt refill indicator irritating, e.g. when using combined detergents with salt replacement substances, you can switch the salt refill indicator off.

Note

To avoid damage to the appliance, only switch off the water softening system in the following cases:

- The water hardness is max. 26 °E and you are using combined detergents with salt replacement substances. According to manufacturers, combined detergents with salt replacement substances can generally only be used up to a water hardness of 26 °E without adding special salt.
- The water hardness is 0 8 °E. You do not need to use special salt.

- 1. Press ①.
- Press and hold > and Start until S and [™] flash.
- 3. Release buttons.
- 4. Press < repeatedly until no LED lights up (level 0).
 → "Overview of water hardness settings", Page 27
- 5. Press Start to save the setting.
- ✓ The LEDs go out.
- The water softening system is switched off and the salt refill indicator is deactivated.

11.5 Regeneration of the water softening system

In order to obtain fault-free function of the water softening system, the appliance performs reheating of the water softening system at regular intervals. Regeneration of the water softening system takes place before the end of the main rinse cycle in all programmes. It will increase the run time and consumption values, e.g. water and electricity.

Overview of consumption values with regeneration the water softening system

Here you can find an overview of the maximum additional running time and consumption values during regeneration of the water softening system. You can find the column applicable to your model in the quick reference guide according to its water consumption in the Eco 50° programme.

Water con- sumption in litres (de- pending on model)	Regeneration of the water softening system after x rinse cycles	Additional running time in minutes	Additional water con- sumption in litres	Additional power con- sumption in kWh
6.5 / 6.7	8	7	5	0.05
7.5 / 7.7	7	7	5	0.05
9.5	6	7	5	0.05
above 10.5	5	7	5	0.05

The consumption values specified are laboratory measurements determined in accordance with the currently applicable standard and using the Eco 50° programme and the factory value of the water hardness is set to $9 - 20^{\circ}$ E.

12 Rinse aid system

You can use the rinse aid system and rinse aid to get tableware and glasses rinsed perfectly without marks.

12.1 Rinse aid

For optimum drying results, use rinse aid.

Only use rinse aid for domestic dishwashers.

Adding rinse aid

If the rinse aid refill indicator lights up, top up with rinse aid. Only use rinse aid for domestic dishwashers.

1. Press the catch on the lid of the dispenser for rinse aid ① and lift ②



2. Add rinse aid up to the max mark.



 If rinse aid spills out, remove it from the tub.
 Spilled rinse aid can cause ex-

cessive frothing during the wash cycle.

- **4.** Close the lid of the dispenser for rinse aid.
- ✓ The lid clicks into position.

12.2 Setting the amount of rinse aid

If there are streaks or water marks on tableware, change the amount of rinse aid.

- 1. Press ①.
- Press and hold > and Start until S and [™] flash.
- 3. Release buttons.
- **4.** Press > repeatedly until * flashes.
- Press < repeatedly until the right amount of rinse aid has been set.

0, 1, 2 or 3 LEDs will light up accordingly.

The factory setting is level 2 (LED A and LED B \rightarrow Page 17).

- A low setting adds less rinse aid during the wash cycle and reduces streaking on tableware.
- A higher setting adds more rinse aid during the wash cycle, reduces water marks and improves the drying result.

- 6. Press Start to save the setting.
- ✓ The LEDs go out.

12.3 Switching rinse aid system off

If you find the rinse aid refill indicator irritating, e.g. when using combined detergents with a rinse aid component, you can switch the rinse aid system off.

Tip: The function of rinse aid is limited with combined detergents. You will generally get better results using rinse aid.

- 1. Press ①.
- Press and hold > and Start until S and [™] flash.
- 3. Release buttons.
- 4. Press > repeatedly until * flashes.
- Press < repeatedly until no LED lights up (level 0).
- 6. Press Start to save the setting.
- The LEDs go out.
- The rinse aid system is switched off and the rinse aid refill indicator is deactivated.

13 Detergent

Find out which detergents are suitable for your appliance.

13.1 Suitable detergents

Only use detergents that are suitable for dishwashers. Both separate and combined detergents are suitable. For optimum washing and drying results, use separate detergent, adding Special salt \rightarrow Page 28 and Rinse aid \rightarrow Page 30 separately.

Modern, powerful detergents mainly use a low-alkaline formulation with enzymes. Enzymes break down starch and remove protein. Oxygenbased bleaching agents are generally used to remove coloured marks, e.g. tea or ketchup.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions for each detergent.

Detergent	Description
Tabs	Tabs are suitable for all cleaning functions and do not need to be measured out. With shorter Pro- grammes tabs some- times do not dissolve entirely and leave residues of deter- gent. This may im- pair the cleaning ef- fect.
Powder de- tergent	Powder detergent is recommended for shorter Programmes. The dosage can be adjusted to the level of soiling.
Liquid deter- gent	 Liquid detergent works faster and is recommended for shorter Programmes without PreRinse. Sometimes liquid de- tergent may leak out despite the detergent dispenser being closed. This is not a fault and is non-crit- ical if you remember the following: Only choose a programme without PreRinse. Do not select timer program- ming for starting the programme.

Detergent Description

The dosage can be adjusted to the level of soiling.

Tip: Suitable detergents are available online via our website or from Customer Services \rightarrow *Page 54*.

Separate detergents

Separate detergents are products that do not contain components other than detergent, e.g. powder detergent or liquid detergent.

With powder and liquid detergent the dosage can be individually adjusted to the level of soiling of the table-ware.

For better washing and drying results and to avoid damage to the appliance, please additionally use Special salt \rightarrow Page 28 and Rinse aid \rightarrow Page 30.

Combined detergent

Besides conventional separate detergents, a number of products are available with additional functions. These products contain not only detergent but also rinse aid and salt replacement substances (3in1) and, depending on the combination (4in1, 5in1, ...), additional components such as glass protection or stainless steel cleaner.

According to manufacturers, combined detergents generally only function up to a water hardness of 26 °E. With a water hardness above 26 °E you will need to add special salt and rinse aid. For the best washing and drying results we recommend using special salt and rinse aid from a water hardness of 17 °E. If you are using combined detergent, the washing programme is adjusted automatically to ensure the best possible washing and drying result.

13.2 Unsuitable detergents

Do not use detergent which could cause damage to the appliance or present a risk to health.

Detergent	Description
Hand wash- ing-up liquid	Hand washing-up li- quid can cause in- creased frothing and damage the appli- ance.
Detergent containing chlorine	Chlorine residue on tableware may present a risk to health.

13.3 Information on detergents

Follow the instructions on detergents in everyday use.

- Detergents marked as "organic" or "ecological" (environmentally friendly) generally contain lower levels of active agents or completely dispense with certain substances. The cleaning effect may be restricted here.
- Set the rinse aid and the water softening system to the separate detergent or combined detergent in use.
- According to manufacturers, combined detergents with salt replacement substances can only be used up to a certain water hardness, usually 26 °E, without adding special salt. For the best washing and drying results we recommend using special salt from a water hardness of 17 °E.
- To prevent sticking, only touch detergents in a water-soluble pouch with dry hands and only ever place them in a dry detergent dispenser.

- Even if the rinse aid and special salt refill indicators light up, washing programmes will run properly with combined detergents.
- The function of rinse aid is limited with combined detergents. You will generally get better results using rinse aid.
- Use tablets with a special drying performance.

13.4 Adding detergent

- **1.** To open the detergent dispenser, press the locking latch.
- 2. Add the detergent to the dry detergent dispenser.



If you are using tablets, one is enough. Insert the tablets in a horizontal position.

If you are using powder or liquid detergent, follow the manufacturer's instructions and quantities for dosage in the detergent dispenser.

20 ml – 25 ml detergent is sufficient for normal soiling. If tableware is only lightly soiled, slightly less than the amount of detergent specified is usually sufficient. **3.** Close the lid of the detergent dispenser.



- ✓ The lid clicks into position.
- ✓ The detergent dispenser will open automatically at the optimum time during the programme. Powder or liquid detergent will spread around the washing tank and dissolve there. Tablets will fall into the tablet collecting tray and dissolve in the right dosage. In order to ensure that tablets can dissolve evenly, do not place any other objects in the tablet collecting tray.

14 Tableware

Only clean tableware that is suitable for dishwashers.

Note: Decorated glassware and parts made of aluminium or silver may fade or discolour with dishwashing. Delicate types of glass may turn cloudy after a few washing cycles.

14.1 Damage to glass and tableware

Avoid damage to glass and tableware.

Cause	Recommenda- tion
 The following tableware is not dishwasher-safe: Items of cutlery and tableware made from wood Decorated glassware, antique and hand-crafted tableware Plastic parts not resistant to heat Tableware made from copper or tin Tableware soiled with ash, wax, lubricating grease or paint Very small items of tableware 	Only put table- ware in the dish- washer if it is marked as dish- washer-safe by the manufacturer.
Glass and table- ware was not dishwasher-safe.	Only put glasses and china in the dishwasher if it is marked as dish- washer-safe by the manufacturer.
The chemical composition of the detergent causes damage.	Use a detergent marked as gentle on tableware by the manufacturer.

Cause	Recommenda- tion
Highly caustic al- kaline or highly acidic cleaning agents, in partic- ular commercial or industrial cleaning agents, are not suitable for dishwashers in conjunction with aluminium.	If you are using highly caustic al- kaline or highly acidic cleaning agents, in partic- ular commercial or industrial cleaning agents, do not put alu- minium parts in the dishwasher interior.
The water tem- perature of the programme is too high.	Select a pro- gramme with lower temperat- ures. After the pro- gramme has ended, take glassware and cutlery out of the appliance without delay.

14.2 Arrange tableware

Arrange the tableware correctly to optimise the dishwashing result and prevent damage to both the appliance and tableware.

Tips

- Using the appliance allows you to save energy and water compared to washing-up by hand.
- See our website for examples of how to load your appliance efficiently, free of charge.
- To save energy and water, load the machine with the number of place settings specified.
 → "Technical specifications", Page 56

• For better washing and drying results, position items with curves or recesses at an angle so the water can run off.



1. Remove large remnants of food from your tableware.

To save resources, do not prerinse tableware under running water.

- 2. Observe the following when arranging tableware:
 - Put heavily soiled tableware in the bottom basket, e.g. pans. The more powerful the spray jet, the better the dishwashing result will be.
 - To prevent damage to tableware, arrange it so it is stable and cannot tip over.
 - To prevent injury, arrange cutlery with the points and sharp edges downwards.
 - Position containers with the openings facing down so no water can collect in them.
 - Do not block the spray arms make sure that they can turn freely.
 - Do not place small parts in the tablet collecting tray and do not block it with tableware so as not to obstruct the lid of the detergent dispenser.



14.3 Removing tableware

A WARNING Risk of injury!

Hot tableware can cause burns to the skin. When hot, tableware is sensitive to shock, may crack and can result in injury.

- When the programme has ended, do not empty the appliance until the tableware has cooled down for a while.
- 1. To prevent water dripping on the tableware, unload it starting at the bottom and working up.
- 2 Check the washing tank and accessories for soiling and clean if necessary.
 → "Cleaning and servicing",

Page 39

15 Basic operation

15.1 Opening appliance door

1. If the childproof lock¹ is not activated, open the appliance door.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

 If the childproof lock¹ is activated, press the catch of the lock to the right ① and open the appliance door ②.



15.2 Switching on the appliance

► Press ①.

The Eco 50 $^\circ$ programme is set by default.

The Eco 50° programme is an especially environmentally friendly programme and ideal for normally soiled tableware. It is the most efficient programme for the combination of energy/water consumption for this type of tableware and evidences conformity with the EU Ecodesign Directive.

If you do not perform any actions on the appliance for 15 minutes, the appliance will automatically switch off.

15.3 Setting a programme

To adjust the wash cycle to the soiling level of the tableware, select a suitable programme.

 Press < or > repeatedly until the right programme has been selected.

→ "Programmes", Page 18

The programme is set and the LED flashes.

15.4 Setting additional functions

You can set additional functions to complete the washing programme selected.

Note: The additional functions which can be used depend on the programme selected.

- → "Programmes", Page 18
- Press the button for the relevant additional function.
 → "Additional functions", Page 20
- The additional function is set and the additional function button flashes.

15.5 Setting timer programming¹

You can delay the start of the programme by 3, 6 or 9 hours.

- 1. Press ^(C) repeatedly until the relevant display lights up.
- 2. To activate timer programming, press Start.

Note: To deactivate timer programming, press (b) repeatedly until none of the displays 3h, 6h or 9h light up.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

15.6 Starting the programme

- Press Start.
- While the programme is running, a spot of light is projected onto the floor below the appliance door. This light will not be visible if the appliance is installed at eye level with the cabinet front fitted flush.¹
- The programme has ended when no indicators on the controls light up.
- The programme has ended when the spot of light is no longer visible on the floor.¹

Notes

- If you want to add more tableware while the appliance is running, do not use the tablet collecting tray as a handle for the top basket. You might touch the partially dissolved tablet.
- You can only change a programme when running if you cancel it.

→ "Terminate programme", Page 37

The appliance switches off automatically 1 minute after the end of the programme to save energy. If you open the appliance door immediately after the programme has ended, the appliance will switch off after 4 seconds.

15.7 Interrupting programme

Note: When you open the appliance door once the appliance has heated up, leave the door slightly ajar for a few minutes and then close it. This will help prevent excess pressure building up in the appliance and stop the appliance door bursting open.

- **1.** Press ①.
- The programme is saved and the appliance switches off.
- 2. Press ① to resume the programme.

15.8 Terminate programme

To end a programme early or to switch from a programme that has already started, you will need to cancel it first.

- 1. Open the appliance door.
- 2. Press Reset 3 sec. for approx. 3 seconds.
- 3. Close the appliance door.
- The indicators of the controls are off.
- The programme is cancelled and ends after approx. 1 minute.

15.9 Switching off appliance

- **1.** Please note the information on Safe use \rightarrow Page 10.
- **2.** Press ①.
- 3. To prevent damage from dripping water, turn the water tap off tight (not applicable to appliances with Aqua-Stop).

Tip: If you press ① during the wash cycle, the programme currently running will be interrupted. When you switch the appliance back on, the programme continues automatically.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

16 Basic settings

You can configure the appliance to meet your needs.

16.1 Overview of basic settings

The basic settings depend on the features of your appliance.

Basic setting	Selection	Description
Water hardness	Scale with 4 levels	Set the water hardness. → "Setting water soften- ing system", Page 28
Rinse aid disp.	Scale with 4 levels	Set the amount of rinse aid to be dispensed or switch off. → "Setting the amount of rinse aid", Page 30
Extra Dry	On Off ¹	Switch ExtraDry on or off for each operation. For a better drying result the temperature in the fi- nal rinse is increased. This may increase the run time slightly. Note: Please take care with delicate tableware. → "Setting Intensive dry- ing", Page 38
Tone volume	Scale with 4 levels	Adjustment of tone volume. → "Setting signal volume", Page 38

Factory setting (may vary according to model)

Setting Intensive drying

- 1. Open the appliance door.
- **2.** Press ①.
- Press and hold > and Start until S and [™] flash.
- 4. Release buttons.
- Press > repeatedly until S and flash.
- 6. Press < repeatedly until the right level has been selected.

- If no LED lights up, Intensive drying is switched off.
- If LED A → Page 17 lights up, Intensive drying is switched on.
- 7. Press Start to save the setting.
- ✓ The LEDs go out.
- 8. Close the appliance door.

Setting signal volume

- 1. Open the appliance door.
- **2.** Press ①.

- Press and hold > and Start until S and [™] flash.
- 4. Release buttons.
- 5. Press > repeatedly until ${\mathfrak S}$ and ${\boldsymbol *}$ flash.
- 6. < repeatedly until the required level has been selected.

0, 1, 2 or 3 LEDs will light up accordingly. The signal tone selected will be heard. The factory setting is level 2 (LED

A and LED B \rightarrow Page 17).

- 7. Press Start to save the setting.
- ✓ The LEDs go out.
- 8. Close the appliance door.

17 Cleaning and servicing

To keep your appliance working efficiently for a long time, it is important to clean and maintain it carefully.

17.1 Cleaning the tub

WARNING Risk of harm to health!

Using detergents containing chlorine may result in harm to health.

- Never use detergents containing chlorine.
- 1. Remove any coarse soiling in the interior with a damp cloth.
- 2. Add detergent to the detergent dispenser.
- Select the programme with the highest temperature.
 → "Programmes", Page 18
- Start the programme without tableware. → Page 37

17.2 Self-cleaning interior¹

To remove deposits, the appliance self-cleans the interior at regular intervals.

The programme sequence is automatically adjusted for self-cleaning, e.g. the cleaning temperature is briefly increased. Consumption values, e.g. water and electricity, may also increase.

If the interior is no longer self-cleaned adequately and deposits occur, see this information:

→ "Cleaning the tub", Page 39.

17.3 Cleaning products

Only use suitable cleaning products to clean your appliance. → "Safe use", Page 10

17.4 Tips on appliance care

Follow the tips on appliance care to make sure your appliance functions properly at all times.

Action	Benefit
Wipe the door seals, the front of the dishwasher and the control panel regularly using a damp cloth and wash- ing-up liquid.	This ensures the parts of the appli- ance will remain clean and hy- gienic.
If the appliance is not going to be used for a while, leave the door slightly ajar.	This will prevent unpleasant odours.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

17.5 Filter system

The filter system removes coarse soiling from the dishwashing cycle.



Cleaning filters

Soiling in the dishwashing water may block the filters.

- **1.** After each wash check the filters for residue.
- 2. Turn the coarse filter anticlockwise ① and remove the filter system ②.
 - Check that no foreign objects fall into the sump.



3. Pull down the micro filter to remove.



 Press the locking catches ① together and lift the coarse filter out ②.



5. Clean the filter elements under running water.

Carefully clean the rim of dirt between the coarse and the fine filter.

- 6. Re-assemble the filter system. Make sure that the locking catches on the coarse filter click into position.
- Insert the filter system into the appliance and turn the coarse filter clockwise.

Make sure that the arrow markings match up.

17.6 Cleaning spray arms

Limescale and soiling in the dishwashing water may block the nozzles and bearings on the spray arms. Clean the spray arms regularly.

1. Unscrew the upper spray arm ① and pull down to remove ②.



2. Pull up the lower spray arm to remove.



- 3. Check the outlet nozzles on the spray arms for blockages under running water and remove any foreign bodies.
- 4. Insert the lower spray arm.
- ✓ The spray arm clicks into position.
- 5. Insert the upper spray arm and screw it firmly in place.

18 Troubleshooting

You can rectify minor faults on your appliance yourself. Read the troubleshooting information before contacting after-sales service. This will avoid unnecessary costs.

🛆 WARNING

Risk of electric shock!

Improper repairs are dangerous.

- Repairs to the appliance should only be carried out by trained specialist staff.
- Only use genuine spare parts when repairing the appliance.
- If the power cord of this appliance is damaged, it must be replaced with a special connection cable, which is available from the manufacturer or his Customer Service.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Appliance door will not open or cannot be opened easily.	Childproof lock is activated. ► Open the appliance door. → Page 35

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting	
Display for water sup- ply lights up	Supply hose is kinked. Install the supply hose without kinks. 	
	Water tap is turned off.Turn on the water tap.	
	Water tap is jammed or furred up.Turn on the water tap.	
	 Filter in the water supply is blocked. 1. Switch off the appliance. 2. Pull out the mains plug. 3. Turn off the water tap. 4. Unscrew the water connection. 5. Remove the filter from the supply hose 	

6. Clean the filter.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Display for water sup- ply lights up	 7. Re-insert the filter in the supply hose. 8. Screw the water connection back on. 9. Check the water connection for leaks. 10. Restore the power supply. 11. Switch the appliance on.
	 Filters are soiled or blocked. Clean the filters. → "Cleaning filters", Page 40
	Wastewater hose is blocked or kinked.1. Reposition the wastewater hose without kinks.2. Remove residues.
	Siphon connection is still sealed.Check the connection to the siphon and open if necessary.
	 Cover of the wastewater pump is loose. Secure the cover of the Wastewater pump → Page 53 so it clicks into position.
Display "Check water supply" flashes	 A technical fault is present. 1. Press ①. 2. Unplug the appliance or switch off the fuse. 3. Wait at least 2 minutes. 4. Insert the mains plug of the appliance in a socket or switch on the fuse. 5. Switch the appliance on. 6. If the problem occurs again: Press ①. Turn off the water tap. Pull out the mains plug. Contact Customer Service → Page 54 and give the error code.
Displays flash	 Appliance door is not closed properly. Close the appliance door. Arrange the tableware so that no parts project beyond the basket and prevent the appliance door from closing properly.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Tableware is not dry.	 No rinse aid used or dosage set too low. 1. Add Rinse aid → Page 30. 2. Set the amount of rinse aid to be dispensed. → "Setting the amount of rinse aid", Page 30
	Selected programme has no drying phaseSelect a programme with drying.
	Water collects in recesses of the tableware or cutlery.Position tableware at an angle where possible.
	 Ine combined detergent used has a poor drying performance. 1. Use rinse aid to improve drying performance. 2. Use a different combined detergent with a better drying performance.
	Extra Dry not activated to improve drying performance.Activate Extra Dry.
T 9 1 2 	Tableware removed too early or drying process not yet ended.1. Wait until the programme ends.2. Only remove tableware 30 minutes after the programme has ended.
	Rinse aid used has a limited drying performance.Use a name-brand rinse aid.
	Eco products may have limited effectiveness.
Plastic tableware is not dry.	Not a fault. As plastic does not store heat so well, it also does not dry as well. • No remedial action possible.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Cutlery is not dry.	 Cutlery not arranged properly in the cutlery basket or cutlery drawer. 1. Arrange the cutlery properly. → "Arrange tableware", Page 34 2. Arrange cutlery individually where possible. 3. Avoid points of contact.
Appliance interior still wet after wash cycle.	Not a fault. The condensation drying principle causes water droplets in the tub – they are indeed desirable here. The moisture in the air condenses on the inside walls, runs off and is pumped out. No action required.
Remnants of food on tableware.	Tableware was placed too close together.1. Arrange tableware with sufficient space in between. The spray jets must reach the surfaces of the tableware.2. Avoid points of contact.
	 Basket is overfilled. 1. Arrange tableware with sufficient space in between. The spray jets must reach the surfaces of the tableware. 2. Avoid points of contact.
	 Spray arm rotation is blocked. Arrange tableware so that it does not obstruct spray arm rotation.
	 Spray arm nozzles are blocked. ▶ Clean the Spray arms → Page 41.
	 Filters are soiled. Clean the filters. → "Cleaning filters", Page 40
	 Filters are inserted incorrectly and/or not engaged. 1. Insert the filters properly. → "Filter system", Page 40 2. Engage the filters.
	 Washing programme selected too weak. Select a more intensive washing programme. Adjust the sensitivity of the sensors.
	Tableware has been precleaned too intensely. The sensors chose a weaker programme. Stubborn soiling cannot be entirely removed.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Remnants of food on tableware.	 Only remove large remnants of food and do not prerinse tableware.
	 Tall narrow receptacles in corner areas are not rinsed adequately. Do not position tall narrow receptacles at too great
	 Iop baskets on right and left are not set to same height. Set the top baskets on the left and right to the same level. → "Top basket", Page 21
Detergent residue in the appliance	 Lid of the detergent dispenser is blocked by items of tableware parts and will not open. 1. Arrange tableware in the top basket tableware so the tab collecting tray is not obstructed by tableware. → "Arrange tableware", Page 34 Items of tableware are blocking the dispenser lid. 2. Do not place tableware or fragrance dispensers in the table tablet collecting tray.
	 The lid of the detergent dispenser is blocked by the tab and will not open. Position the tab in the detergent dispenser crosswise, not vertically.
	 Tabs are used in the quick or short programme. Dissolving time of the tab is not attained. Select a more intensive Programme or use Powder detergent → Page 31.
	 Washing effect and dissolving performance are reduced after a prolonged storage time or detergent is very lumpy. Change your detergent → Page 31.
Water marks on plastic parts.	 Due to laws of physics droplet formation on plastic surfaces is unavoidable. After drying water marks are visible. Select a more intensive programme. Position tableware at an angle. <i>¬</i> "Arrange tableware", Page 34 Use rinse aid. <i>"Rinse aid"</i>, Page 30 Set the water softening system higher.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Wipeable or water-sol- uble coatings are present inside the ap- pliance or on the door.	 Detergent substances are deposited there. These coatings cannot generally be removed with chemicals. Change your detergent → Page 31. Clean the appliance mechanically.
	White coating is deposited in the appliance interior.1. Set the water softening system correctly. In most cases you will need to increase the setting.2. Change your detergent if required.
	Special salt dispenser is not screwed tight.Screw the special salt dispenser tight.
Stubborn white coat- ings are present on tableware, inside the appliance or the door.	 Detergent substances are deposited there. These coatings cannot generally be removed with chemicals. Change your detergent → Page 31. Clean the appliance mechanically.
	 The hardness range is set incorrectly or the water hardness is greater than 44 °E (6,2 mmol/I). ▶ Set the Water softening system → Page 27 to the water hardness or add special salt.
	 3in1/organic/eco detergent is not effective enough. Set the Water softening system → Page 27 to the water hardness and use separate detergents (proprietary detergent, special salt, rinse aid).
	 Too little detergent is being used. Increase the amount of detergent used or change Detergent → Page 31.
	 Washing programme selected too weak. Select a more intensive washing programme. Adjust the sensitivity of the sensors.
Tea residue or lipstick marks on tableware.	 Washing temperature is too low. Select a programme with a higher washing temperature.
	 Too little detergent is being used or is unsuitable. ► Use a suitable Detergent → Page 31 and follow the manufacturer's instructions for the amount to be used.
	 Tableware has been precleaned too intensely. The sensors chose a weaker programme. Stubborn soiling cannot be entirely removed. Only remove large remnants of food and do not prerinse tableware.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Coloured coatings (blue, yellow, brown) that are difficult or im- possible to remove are present inside the appliance or on stain- less steel tableware.	 The formation of films is due to substances contained in vegetables (cabbage, celery, potatoes, noodles, etc.) or tap water (manganese). Clean the appliance.
	You can remove deposits with Mechanical cleaning \rightarrow Page 39 or a machine cleaning product. It may not always be possible to completely remove deposits but they are harmless to health.
	The formation of films is due to metal components on silver or aluminium tableware.Clean the appliance.
	You can remove deposits with Mechanical cleaning \rightarrow Page 39 or a machine cleaning product. It may not always be possible to completely remove deposits but they are harmless to health.
Coloured deposits (yellow, orange, brown) that are easy to remove are present inside the appliance (mainly at the bottom).	 The formation of films is due to ingredients of food remnants and tap water (limescale) "soaplike". 1. Check the setting of the water softening system. → "Setting water softening system", Page 28 2. Add special salt. → "Adding special salt", Page 28 3. If you are using combined detergents (tabs), activate the water softening system. Follow the information about detergents. → "Information on detergents", Page 32
Plastic parts inside the appliance are discoloured.	 Plastic parts inside the appliance may become discoloured during the life of the dishwasher. Discolouration can come about and will not impair functioning of the appliance.
Plastic parts are dis- coloured.	Washing temperature is too low.Select a programme with a higher washing temperature.
	 Tableware has been precleaned too intensely. The sensors chose a weaker programme. Stubborn soiling cannot be entirely removed. Only remove large remnants of food and do not prerinse tableware.
Removable streaks are present on glasses, glassware with a metallic appear- ance and cutlery.	Amount of rinse aid to be dispensed is set too high.Set the rinse aid system to a lower setting.
	No rinse aid has been added. ► → "Adding rinse aid", Page 30

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Removable streaks are present on glasses, glassware with a metallic appear- ance and cutlery.	 Detergent residue is present in the final rinse. Lid of the detergent dispenser is blocked by tableware items and will not open fully. 1. Arrange tableware in the top basket tableware so the tab collecting tray is not obstructed by tableware. → "Arrange tableware", Page 34 Items of tableware are blocking the dispenser lid. 2. Do not place tableware or fragrance dispensers in
	the tablet collecting tray.
	 Tableware has been precleaned too intensely. The sensors chose a weaker programme. Stubborn soiling cannot be entirely removed. Only remove large remnants of food and do not prerinse tableware. Adjust the sensitivity of the sensors.
Irreversible clouding of glassware.	 Glasses are not dishwasher-proof, only suitable for dishwashers. Use dishwasher-proof glasses. Avoid a lengthy steam phase (standing time after wash cycle ends). Use a programme with a lower temperature. Set the softening system to the water hardness. Use detergent with a glass protection component.
Rust spots on cutlery.	Cutlery is not sufficiently rust-resistant. Knife blades are often more severely affected. • Use rust-resistant tableware.
	Cutlery may also rust if washed together with rusting items. • Do not wash rusting items.
	Salt content in washing water is too high.1. Remove any spilled special salt from the tub.2. Screw the cap of the special salt dispenser on tight.
Detergent residue is present in the deter- gent dispenser or the tablet collecting tray.	 Spray arms were blocked by tableware so detergent was not rinsed out. Check that the spray arms are not blocked and can rotate freely.
	 Detergent dispenser was damp when detergent was added. Only add detergent to a detergent dispenser when dry.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Excessive formation of foam occurs.	 Hand washing-up liquid is present in dispenser for rinse aid. Immediately add rinse aid to the dispenser. → "Adding rinse aid", Page 30
	Rinse aid has been spilled.Remove the rinse aid with a cloth.
	Detergent or appliance care product used causes excessive foaming.Change the brand of detergent.
Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Special salt refill indic- ator lights up.	Insufficient special salt. ► Add Special salt → Page 28.
	Sensor does not detect special salt tablets.Do not use special salt tablets.
Refill indicator for spe- cial salt does not light up.	 Water softening system is switched off. ▶ Setting water softening system → Page 28
Refill indicator for rinse aid lights up.	 Insufficient rinse aid. 1. Add Rinse aid → Page 30. 2. Set the amount of rinse aid to be dispensed. → "Setting the amount of rinse aid", Page 30
Refill indicator for rinse aid does not light up.	Rinse aid system is switched off. ► → "Setting the amount of rinse aid", Page 30
Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Water is left in the appliance at the end of the programme.	Filter system or area under the filters is blocked. 1. Clean the Filters \rightarrow Page 40. 2. Clean the Wastewater pump \rightarrow Page 53.
	 Programme has not yet ended. Wait until the programme ends or cancel the programme with reset. → "Terminate programme", Page 37
Appliance cannot be switched on or oper- ated.	 Appliance functions have failed. 1. Pull out the mains plug or switch off the fuse. 2. Wait at least 2 minutes. 3. Connect the appliance to the power supply. 4. Switch the appliance on.

Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
Appliance does not start.	The mains fuse has tripped.Check the relevant fuse.
	Mains cable is not inserted.1. Check whether the socket works.2. Check whether the mains cable is properly inserted in the socket and on the rear of the appliance.
	Appliance door is not closed properly.Close the appliance door.
Programme starts automatically.	You did not wait until programme ended. ► → "Terminate programme", Page 37
Appliance stops dur- ing the programme or cuts out.	Appliance door is not closed properly.Close the appliance door.
	Power and/or water supply has been interrupted.1. Check the power supply.2. Check the water supply.
	 Top basket is pressing against inner door and preventing appliance door from being closed securely. Check whether the rear panel of the appliance is being pressed in by a socket or hose holder that has not been removed. Arrange the tableware so that no parts project beyond the basket and prevent the appliance door from closing properly.
Appliance door can- not be closed.	 Cause and troubleshooting Door lock has been activated. Close the appliance door with greater force.
	 Door cannot be closed due to installation method. Check whether the appliance has been installed properly. When closed, the appliance door, its decor or attached parts should not knock against adjacent cabinets or the worktop.
Lid on the detergent dispenser cannot be closed.	Detergent dispenser or lid are blocked by sticky deter- gent residue. ► Remove detergent residue.
Fault	Cause and troubleshooting
--	--
Filling valves making knocking noises.	 Caused by the domestic installation. No appliance fault present. Does not affect functioning of the appliance. Can only be remedied in the domestic installation.
Knocking or rattling noise.	 Spray arm is striking tableware. Arrange tableware so that the spray arms do not strike tableware.
	 With a small load the water jets directly strike against the tub. Distribute the tableware evenly. Load the appliance with more tableware.
	Light items of tableware move about during the wash cycle.Position light items of tableware securely.

18.1 Clean wastewater pump

Large remnants of food or foreign bodies can block the wastewater pump. As soon as the washing water no longer drains properly, the wastewater pump must be cleaned.

A WARNING Risk of injury!

Sharp and pointed objects or fragments of glass may block the waste water pump and cause injury.

- Remove any foreign bodies carefully.
- **1.** Disconnect the appliance from the power supply.
- 2. Remove the top and bottom basket.
- 3. Remove the filter system.
- **4.** Scoop out any water. Use a sponge if necessary.
- 5. Prise off the pump cover using a spoon and grip it by the crosspiece.



- 6. Lift the pump cover inwards at an angle and remove.
- **7.** Remove any remnants of food and foreign bodies in the area of the impeller.

Insert the pump cover ① and press down ②.



- The pump cover clicks into position.
- 9. Install the filter system.

10. Insert the top and bottom basket.

19 Transportation, storage and disposal

19.1 Removing the appliance

- 1. Disconnect the appliance from the power supply.
- 2. Turn off the water tap.
- **3.** Detach the drainage connection.
- 4. Detach the drinking water connection.
- **5.** Loosen any screws fastening the appliance to cabinet parts.
- 6. Remove the base panel if fitted.
- 7. Pull the appliance out carefully, along with the hose behind it.

19.2 Protect appliance from frost

If there is a risk of frost where the appliance will be standing, e.g. in a holiday home, empty the appliance completely.

• Empty the appliance. \rightarrow Page 54

19.3 Transporting the appliance

To avoid damage to the appliance, empty it before transporting.

Note: Always transport the dishwasher upright to prevent residual water getting into the machine's controls and damaging the appliance.

- 1. Remove tableware from the appliance.
- 2. Secure loose parts.
- 3. Turn on the water tap.
- **4.** Switch on appliance. \rightarrow Page 36
- Select the programme with the highest temperature.
 → "Programmes", Page 18
- 6. Start the programme. \rightarrow Page 37
- 7. To drain the appliance, terminate the programme after approx.
 4 minutes.
 → "Terminate programme", Page 37
- **8.** Switch off the appliance. \rightarrow Page 37
- 9. Turn off the water tap.
- **10.**To empty the residual water out of the appliance, detach the supply hose and let the water drain out.

19.4 Disposing of old appliance

Valuable raw materials can be reclaimed by recycling.

MARNING Risk of harm to health!

Children can lock themselves in the appliance, thereby putting their lives at risk.

 With redundant appliances, unplug the power cord. Then cut through the cord and damage the lock on the appliance door beyond repair so that the appliance door will no longer close.

- 1. Unplug the appliance from the mains.
- 2. Cut through the power cord.
- **3.** Dispose of the appliance in an environmentally friendly manner.



This appliance is labelled in accordance with European Directive 2012/19/EU concerning used electrical and electronic appliances (waste electrical and electronic equipment - WEEE). The guideline determines the framework for the return and recycling of used appliances as applicable throughout the EU.

20 Customer Service

Function-relevant genuine spare parts according to the corresponding Ecodesign Order can be obtained from Customer Service for a period of at least 10 years from the date on which your appliance was placed on the market within the European Economic Area.

Note: Under the terms of the manufacturer's warranty the use of Customer Service is free of charge.

Detailed information on the warranty period and terms of warranty in your country is available from our aftersales service, your retailer or on our website.

If you contact Customer Service, you will require the product number (E-Nr.) and the production number (FD) of your appliance.

The contact details for Customer Service can be found in the enclosed Customer Service directory or on our website.

20.1 Product number (E-Nr.) and production number (FD)

You can find the product number (E-Nr.) and the production number (FD) on the appliance's rating plate. The rating plate is located inside the appliance door.

Make a note of your appliance's details and the Customer Service telephone number to find them again quickly.

20.2 AQUA-STOP guarantee¹

In addition to warranty claims against the seller under the purchase agreement and in addition to our manufacturer's warranty, we will provide a replacement under the following conditions.

- If our Aqua-Stop system is defective and causes water damage, we will make good the damage for private users. To ensure protection from water damage, the appliance must be connected to the power supply.
- The liability guarantee is valid for the service life of the appliance.
- A claim can only be made under the guarantee if the appliance has been correctly installed and connected with Aqua-Stop according to our instructions; this also includes correctly fitting the Aqua-Stop extension (genuine accessory). Our guarantee does not cover

defective supply lines or fittings up to the Aqua-Stop connection on the tap.

 If your appliance is fitted with Aqua-Stop, you can leave your appliance unattended during operation and the tap turned on afterwards. The tap only needs to be turned off if you are away from home for a long period, e.g. on holiday for several weeks.

¹ Depending on the appliance specifications

21 Technical specifications

Weight	Max.: 60 kg
Voltage	220 - 240 V, 50 Hz or 60 Hz
Power rating	2000 - 2400 W
Fuse	10 - 16 A
Water pressure	 Min. 0.05 MPa (0.5 bar) Max. 1 MPa (10 bar)
Inlet rate	Min. 10 I/min
Water temperature	Cold water. Hot water max.: 60 °C
Capacity	12 - 15 place settings
You can find more information about your model online at https://	identifier is made up of the charac- ters before the slash in the product

your model online at https:// eprel.ec.europa.eu/¹. This web address is linked to the official EU EPREL product database. Please then follow the instructions on searching for models. The model identifier is made up of the characters before the slash in the product number (E-Nr.) on the rating plate. Alternatively, you can also find the model identifier in the first line of the EU energy label.

¹ Only applies to countries in the European Economic Area



Thank you for buying a Bosch Home Appliance!

Register your new device on MyBosch now and profit directly from:

- Expert tips & tricks for your appliance
- Warranty extension options
- Discounts for accessories & spare-parts
- Digital manual and all appliance data at hand
- Easy access to Bosch Home Appliances Service

Free and easy registration – also on mobile phones: **www.bosch-home.com/welcome**

BOSCH HOME APPLIANCES SERVICE

Looking for help? You'll find it here.

Expert advice for your Bosch home appliances, help with problems or a repair from Bosch experts.

Find out everything about the many ways Bosch can support you: **www.bosch-home.com/service**

Contact data of all countries are listed in the attached service directory.

BSH Hausgeräte GmbH

Carl-Wery-Straße 34 81739 München, GERMANY www.bosch-home.com

A Bosch Company



Valid within Great Britain: Imported to Great Britain by BSH Home Appliances Ltd. Grand Union House Old Wolverton Road Wolverton, Milton Keynes MK12 5PT United Kingdom

Washer Dryer User Manual



Register your new device on MyBosch now and get free benefits: bosch-home.com/ welcome



Washer dryer

WNA14490GB

en Instruction Manual and Installation Instructions

Your new washer dryer

You have chosen a Bosch washer dryer.

Please take a few minutes to read and become familiar with the advantages of your washer dryer.

To meet the high quality demands required by Bosch, every washer dryer that leaves our factory is carefully checked to ensure that it functions correctly and is in perfect condition.

For more information on our products, accessories, replacement parts and services, see our website www.boschhome.com or contact our after-sales service centres.

If the operating and installation instructions describe different models, any differences will be pointed out at the relevant points in the text.



Read these operating and installation instructions before switching on the washer dryer.

Display rules

▲ Warning!

This combination of symbol and signal word indicates a possibly dangerous situation. Not heeding the warning can cause death or injuries.

Caution!

This signal word indicates a possibly dangerous situation. Not heeding the caution can cause property and/or environmental damage.

Note/tip

Information about the optimum use of the appliance/any other useful information.

1. 2. 3. / a) b) c)

The steps are represented by numbers or letters.

/ -

Lists are represented by a small box or a dash.

Contents

Sev Intended use4
Safety instructions
Environmental protection12 Packaging/used appliance
Positioning and connecting 13Standard accessories 13Safety instructions
Getting to know the appliance
Laundry25Preparing laundry for washing.25Preparing laundry for drying.26Starching.26Dyeing/bleaching.26

Detergents and care	
products	27 27
P Overview of programmes 2 Selectable programme	28 28 32
P+ Programme default settings3 I Temp.°C	33 33 33 33
P+* Additional programme settings. 3 ☆ Drying Target. 3 ↓ Prewash 3 □ Reduced Ironing. 3 =① SpeedPerfect 3	34 34 34 34
Operating the appliance 3 Preparing the appliance 3 Select programme/switch on the appliance 3 Placing laundry into the drum 3 Dosing and adding detergent and care products 3 Starting the programme 3 Childproof lock 3 Adding/removing laundry 3 Changing the programme 3 Programme end 3 Removing laundry/switching off the appliance 3 Removing laundry/switching off the appliance 3	35 35 35 35 36 37 38 38 38 38 38 39 39 39

Cleaning and maintenance ... 40

n
1
1 2 3
4
4 4 6
0
C
0 1
0 1 2

See Intended use

- This appliance is intended for private domestic use only.
- Do not install or operate this appliance anywhere that is liable to experience frost and/or outdoor conditions. There is a risk that the appliance will be damaged if residual water in it freezes. If hoses freeze up, they may crack/burst.
- This appliance must only be used for washing domestic laundry, consisting of machine-washable items and hand-washable woollens (see label on item). Using the appliance for any other purpose is outside of the scope of its intended application and is forbidden.
- This appliance must only be used for drying and freshening up domestic laundry, consisting of items that have been washed with water and are suitable for tumble drying (see label on item). Using the appliance for any other purpose is outside of the scope of its intended application and is forbidden.
- This appliance is suitable for operation with mains water and commercially available detergents and care products (must be suitable for use in washing machines).
- This appliance is intended for use up to a maximum height of 4000 metres above sea level.

Before you switch on the appliance:

Check that there is no visible damage to the appliance. Do not operate the appliance if it is damaged. Should you have any problems, please contact your specialist dealer or our customer service.

Read and follow the operating and installation instructions and all other information provided with this appliance.

Retain the documents for subsequent use or for subsequent owners.

A Safety instructions

The following safety information and warnings are provided to protect you from injury and to prevent material damage to your surroundings.

It is nevertheless important to take the necessary precautions and to proceed with care when installing, maintaining, cleaning and operating the appliance.

Children/people/pets

▲ Warning Risk of death!

Children and other people who are unable to assess the risks involved when using the appliance may injure themselves or may find themselves in life-threatening situations. Therefore please note:

- The appliance may be used by children over the age of 8 years and by persons with reduced physical, sensory or mental capacity or by persons with a lack of experience or knowledge as long as they are supervised or have received instruction on how to use the appliance safely and they have understood the potential risks of using the appliance. Children must not play with
- Children must not play with this appliance.

- Do not allow children to clean or maintain this appliance unsupervised.
- Keep children under 3 years and pets away from this appliance.
- Do not leave the appliance unattended when children or other people who are unable to assess the risks are in the vicinity.

▲ Warning Risk of death!

Children may lock themselves inside appliances and find themselves in a life-threatening situation.

- Do not position the appliance behind a door, as this may obstruct the appliance door or prevent it from opening completely.
- Once an appliance has reached the end of its life, pull the mains plug from the socket **before** severing the mains cable, and then destroy the lock on the appliance door.

Marning Risk of suffocation!

If allowed to play with the packaging/plastic film or packing components, children may become caught in these or pull them over their heads and suffocate.

Keep packaging, plastic film and packing components away from children.

▲ Warning Risk of poisoning!

Detergents and care products may result in poisoning if consumed.

If accidentally swallowed, seek medical advice. Keep detergents and care products out of the reach of children.

Warning Eye/skin irritation!

Contact with detergents or care products may cause eye/skin irritation.

Rinse eyes/skin thoroughly if they/it come(s) into contact with detergents or care products. Keep detergents and care products out of the reach of children.

Installation

MWarning

Risk of electric shock/fire/ material damage/damage to the appliance!

If the appliance is not installed properly, this may lead to a dangerous situation. Ensure the following:

 The mains voltage on your power socket must match the rated voltage specified on the appliance (identification plate). The connected loads and the required fuse protection are specified on the identification plate.

- The appliance must not be supplied through an external switching device, such as a timer, or connected to a circuit that is regularly switched on and off by a utility.
- The mains plug and the protective contact socket must match and the earthing system must be correctly installed.
- The installation must have an adequate cross section.
- The mains plug must be freely accessible at all times. If this is not possible, in order to comply with the relevant safety regulations, a switch (all pole disconnection) must be built into the permanent installation in accordance with electrical installation regulations.
- If using a residual current circuit breaker, only use one that bears the following mark: A line presence of this mark is the only way to be sure that it fulfils all the applicable regulations.

Warning

Risk of electric shock/fire/ material damage/damage to the appliance!

If the appliance's mains cable is altered or damaged, this may result in electric shock, short circuiting or fire due to overheating. The mains cable must not be kinked, crushed or altered, and must not come into contact with any heat sources.

\Lambda Warning

Risk of fire/material damage/ damage to the appliance!

The use of extension cords or power strips may result in fire due to overheating or short circuiting.

Connect the appliance directly to an earthed socket that has been correctly installed. Do not use extension cords, power strips or multi-way couplers.

Warning Risk of injury/material damage/damage to the appliance!

- The appliance may vibrate or move when in operation, potentially resulting in injury or material damage.
 Place the appliance on a clean, even, solid surface and, using a spirit level to guide you, level it with the screw-in feet.
- If you take hold of any of the appliance's protruding parts (e.g. the appliance door) in order to lift or move it, these parts may break off and cause injury.

Do not take hold of any of the appliance's protruding parts in order to move the appliance.

Marning

Risk of injury!

- The appliance is very heavy. Lifting it may result in injury. Do not lift the appliance on your own.
- The appliance has sharp edges on which you could cut your hands.
 Do not take hold of the appliance by its sharp edges. Wear protective gloves to lift it.
- If the hoses and mains cables are not correctly routed, they may constitute a tripping hazard, which may result in injury.
 Route hoses and cables such that they do not constitute a tripping hazard.

Caution!

Material damage/damage to the appliance

 If the water pressure is too high or too low, the appliance may not be able to operate properly, and it may also result in material damage or damage to the appliance.
 Make sure that the water pressure in the water supply facility is at least 100 kPa (1 bar), and does not exceed 1000 kPa (10 bar).

- If the water hoses are altered or damaged, this may result in material damage or damage to the appliance. The water hoses must not be kinked, crushed, altered or severed.
- The use of hoses supplied by other brands to connect to the water supply may result in material damage or damage to the appliance. Use the hoses supplied with the appliance or genuine spare part hoses only.
- The appliance is secured for transportation by transport locking devices. If the transport locking devices are not removed before the appliance is operated, this may result in damage to the appliance.

It is important to completely remove all transport locking devices before using the appliance for the first time. Make sure that you retain these transport locking devices separately. It is important to refit the transport locking devices if the appliance is to be transported, in order to prevent the appliance from being damaged in transit.

Operation

Marning Risk of explosions/fire!

Laundry that has come into contact with solvents, oil, wax, wax remover, paint, grease or stain remover may ignite when dried in the machine, or even cause the appliance to explode. Therefore please note:

- Rinse the laundry thoroughly with warm water and detergent before drying it in the machine.
- Do not place laundry in this appliance to be dried if the laundry has not been washed first.
- Do not use the appliance if industrial chemicals have been used to clean the laundry.

Marning Risk of explosions/fire!

- Laundry that has been pretreated with cleaning agents that contain solvents, e.g. stain remover/cleaning solvent, may cause an explosion in the drum. Rinse the laundry thoroughly with water before washing it in the machine.
- Certain objects may ignite when drying is in progress, or even cause the appliance to catch fire or explode. Remove any lighters or matches from pockets on items of clothing.

 If there is coal dust or flour in the air around the appliance, this may cause an explosion. Make sure that the area around the appliance is kept clean when it is in operation.

Warning

Risk of fire/material damage/ damage to the appliance!

If a program is terminated before the drying cycle has finished, this prevents the laundry from cooling down sufficiently and may cause the laundry to ignite, or may result in material damage or damage to the appliance.

- During the last part of the drying cycle, the laundry in the drum is not heated (cooling cycle). This is to ensure that it remains at a temperature at which it will not be damaged.
- Do not switch off the appliance before the drying cycle has finished unless you remove all items of laundry from the drum immediately and spread them out (to dissipate the heat).

▲ Warning Risk of poisoning!

Poisonous fumes may be given off by cleaning agents that contain solvents, e.g. cleaning solvent.

Do not use cleaning agents that contain solvents.

Marning Risk of injury

Risk of injury!

- If you support your weight/sit on the appliance door when it is open, the appliance may tip over, which may result in injury.
 Do not support your weight on the appliance door when it is open.
- If you climb onto the appliance, the worktop may break, which may result in injury.
 Do not climb onto the appliance.
- If you reach into the drum while it is still rotating, you risk injuring your hands.
 Wait until the drum has stopped rotating.

⚠ Warning Risk of scalding!

When washing at high temperatures, there is a risk of scalding if you come into contact with hot detergent solution (e.g. when draining hot detergent solution into a washbasin).

Do not reach into the hot detergent solution.

Marning Eye/skin irritation!

Detergent and care products may spray out if the detergent drawer is opened while the appliance is in operation. Rinse eyes/skin thoroughly if they/it come(s) into contact with detergents or care products. If accidentally swallowed, seek medical advice.

Caution!

Material damage/damage to the appliance

 If the amount of laundry in the appliance exceeds its maximum load capacity, it may not be able to operate properly, or this may result in material damage or damage to the appliance.

Do not exceed the maximum load capacity of dry laundry. Make sure you comply with the maximum load capacities specified for each of the programs.

 Foam and foam rubber may deform or melt if dried in the appliance.

Do not dry laundry items that contain foam or foam rubber in the appliance. If you pour the wrong quantity of detergent or cleaning agent into the appliance, this may result in material damage or damage to the appliance. Use detergents/care products/cleaning agents and softeners in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

Cleaning/Maintenance

▲ Warning Risk of death!

The appliance is powered by electricity. There is a risk of electric shock if you come into contact with live components. Therefore please note:

- Switch off the appliance. Disconnect the appliance from the power supply (pull out the plug).
- Never take hold of the mains plug with wet hands.
- When removing the mains plug from the socket, always take hold of the plug itself and never the mains cable, otherwise this may damage the mains cable.
- Do not make any technical modifications to the appliance or its features.

- Repairs and any other work on the appliance must only be conducted by our customer service or by an electrician. The same applies for replacing the mains cable (when necessary).
- Spare mains cables can be ordered from our customer service.

▲ Warning Risk of poisoning!

Poisonous fumes may be given off by cleaning agents that contain solvents, e.g. cleaning solvent.

Do not use cleaning agents that contain solvents.

\Lambda Warning

Risk of electric shock/material damage/damage to the appliance!

If moisture penetrates the appliance, this may cause it to short circuit.

Do not use a pressure washer, steam cleaner, hose or spray gun to clean your appliance. **M**Warning

Risk of injury/material damage/damage to the appliance!

The use of spare parts and accessories supplied by other brands is dangerous and may result in injury, material damage or damage to the appliance. For safety reasons, use genuine spare parts and accessories only.

Caution!

Material damage/damage to the appliance

Cleaning agents and agents for pretreating laundry (e.g. stain removers, prewash sprays, etc.) may cause damage if they come into contact with the surfaces of the appliance. Therefore please note:

- Do not allow these agents to come into contact with the surfaces of the appliance.
- Clean the appliance with nothing but water and a soft, damp cloth.
- Remove any detergent, spray or other residues immediately.

Environmental protection

X

Packaging/used appliance

Dispose of packaging in an environmentally-responsible manner.

This appliance is labelled in accordance with European Directive 2012/19/EU concerning used electrical and electronic appliances (waste electrical and electronic equipment - WEEE). The guideline determines the framework for the return and recycling of used appliances as applicable throughout the

FU.

Save energy and conserve resources

If you follow these instructions, your appliance will use less electricity and less water.

Choose programmes with low temperatures and longer wash times and use maximum load capacity \rightarrow Page 28.

 Energy consumption and water consumption is most efficient.

Use the economy programme settings.

 If you adjust the programme settings for a programme, the display shows the expected consumption.

Add \rightarrow Page 27 detergent based on the laundry's degree of soiling.

 For light to normal soiling, a smaller amount of detergent is sufficient. Observe the dosage recommendation from the detergent manufacturer. Reduce the washing temperature for lightly and normally soiled laundry.

 At low temperatures, the appliance consumes less energy. For light to normal soiling, lower temperatures than indicated on the care label are also sufficient.

Set the maximum spin speed if you want to dry the laundry in a tumble dryer afterwards.

The drier the laundry, the shorter the programme duration when drying which, in turn, reduces energy consumption. A higher spin speed reduces the residual moisture in the laundry and increases the volume of the spin noise.

Wash the laundry without prewash.

 Washing with prewash increases the programme duration and increases energy and water consumption.

The appliance has a continuous automatic load adjustment function.

 Depending on the type of fabric and load capacity, the continuous automatic load adjustment function optimally adjusts the water consumption and programme duration.

Energy saving mode

If the appliance is not operated for a prolonged period (approx. 5 minutes), it automatically switches to energy-saving mode, the display panel lighting goes out before the programme starts and after the programme has ended, — (The indicator of DII Start/Reload button) flashes. Touch any area of display panel to activate the display backlighting.

energy saving mode is not be activated when the programme is running.

Positioning and connecting

Standard accessories

Note: Check the appliance for transport damage. Never use a damaged appliance. If you have any complaints, contact the dealer from whom you purchased the appliance or our Customer Service.





- A B
- Installation and operating instructions
- Customer Service location directory*
- Warranty*

Mains lead

Bag:

- Supplementary sheet for the installation and operating instructions*
- Cover caps for openings after the transport braces have been removed
- Home Connect Installation Guides*
- C Water inlet hose on aquaStop models
- D Water outlet hose
- E Elbow for securing the water outlet hose*
- F Cold water inlet hose on Standard/Aqua-Secure models
- * Depending on the model

In addition, a hose clamp (24 - 40 mm diameter, available from specialist retailers) is required to connect the water outlet hose to a siphon.

Useful tool

- Spirit level for aligning
- Wrench with:
 - WAF13 for loosening the transport braces and
 - WAF17 for aligning the appliance feet

Safety instructions

Marning Risk of injury!

- The appliance is very heavy. Be careful when lifting/transporting the appliance.
- When the appliance is lifted by its protruding parts (e.g. the appliance door), the components may break off and cause injuries.
 Do not lift the appliance by protruding parts.

 If the hose and mains cables are not routed properly, there is a risk of tripping and injury.
 Lay hoses and cables in such a way that there is no risk of tripping.

Caution!

Damage to the appliance

Frozen hoses may rip/burst. Do not install the appliance in areas exposed to frost or outdoors.

Caution!

Water damage

The connection points for the water supply hose and water drain hose are under high water pressure. To prevent leaks and water damage, you must follow the instructions in this section.

Notes

- In addition to the safety information listed here, the local water and electricity supplier may have special requirements.
- If in doubt, have the appliance connected by a specialist.

Installation surface

Note: The appliance must be stable aligned so that it does not move around.

- The installation surface must be firm and level.
- Soft floors/floor coverings are not suitable.

Installation on a base or a wooden joist floor

Caution!

Damage to the appliance

The appliance may "wander" and tip/ topple from the base when spinning. The feet of the appliance must be secured with holding brackets. Order no. WMZ 2200, WX 975600, CZ 110600, Z 7080X0. **Note:** On wooden joist floors, install the appliance:

- In a corner, if possible,
- On a water-resistant wooden board (min. 30 mm thick) which is screwed tightly to the floor.

Installing the appliance in a kitchenette

Warning Risk of death!

There is a risk of electric shock if you touch live components.

Do not remove the appliance covering plate.

Notes

- Recess width of 60 cm required.
- Only install the appliance underneath a continuous worktop that is securely connected to adjacent cabinets.

Removing the transport locks

Caution! Damage to the appliance

 The appliance is secured for transportation using transport locks. If the transport locks are not removed, the appliance may become damaged when it is operated.

Before using the appliance for the first time, make sure that you completely remove all four transport locks. Keep the locks in a safe place.

 To prevent transport damage from occurring if the appliance is moved at a later date, you must refit the transport locks before transporting the appliance. **Note:** Keep the screws and sleeves in a safe place.



1. Take the hoses out of the holders.



2. Unscrew and remove all four transport brace screws.



a) Remove the mains cable from the holders.



b) Remove the sleeves.



3. Fit the covers.



4. Lock the covers firmly in place by applying pressure to the snap-in hooks.



Removing the support struts

1. Unscrew and remove all screws in the vertical transport struts.



2. Remove the transport struts.



3. Undo and remove the screws on the horizontal transport strut.



4. Remove the transport strut.



Hose and cable lengths

Connection on left side



1	~130 cm
2	~ 150 cm
3	~ 90 cm
4	60 cm ~ 100 cm

or

Connection on right side



- 1 ~ 85 cm
- 2 ~ 195 cm
- <u>3</u> ~ 135 cm
- 4 60 cm ~ 100 cm

Tip: The following are available from specialist dealers/the after-sales service:

- An extension for Aqua-Stop or cold water supply hose (approx. 2.50 m); order no. WMZ2381
- A longer supply hose (approx. 2.20 m) for standard model.

Water inlet

Marning Risk of death!

There is a risk of electric shock if you touch live components.

Do not immerse the Aqua-Stop safety valve* in water (it contains an electric valve).

* Depending on the model

Observe the following when connecting the appliance:

Notes

- Only operate the appliance using cold mains water.
- Do not connect the appliance to the mixer tap of an unpressurised hotwater boiler.
- Do not use a used supply hose. Only use the supply hose supplied or one that was purchased from an authorised specialist retailer.
- Do not bend, squash, modify or cut through the water supply hose (otherwise its strength is no longer guaranteed).
- Only tighten the screw connections by hand. If the screw connections are tightened too much with a tool (pliers), the thread may be damaged.

Optimum water pressure in the supply network

At least 100 kPa (1 bar)

Maximum 1000 kPa (10 bar)

When the tap is open, the water flow is at least 8 l/min.

If the water pressure is higher than this, a pressure-reducing valve must be installed.

Connection

 Connect the water supply hose to the water tap (³/₄" = 26.4 mm) and to the appliance: - Model: Standard



- Model: Aqua-Secure



Model: Aqua-Stop



Tip: Connect also an external water filter (depending on the model) between water supply hose and tap. The filter filters dirt particles out of the water.

Water filter must be cleaned regularly to remove contaminants. This will prevent blockages. See also \rightarrow separate installation and cleaning instruction for water filter.

2. Open the water tap carefully, checking the leak tightness of the connection points. The screw connection is under mains water pressure.

Water outlet

Warning Risk of scalding!

When you are washing at high temperatures, there is a risk of scalding if you come into contact with hot water (e.g. when draining hot water into a washbasin).

Do not reach into the hot water.

Caution! Water damage

When water is being pumped away, the

outlet hose is under water pressure and may slip out of the wash basin or connection point.

Secure the drain hose so that it cannot slip out.

Caution!

Damage to the appliance/fabrics

If the end of the drain hose is immersed in the drained water, water may be sucked back into the appliance and may damage the appliance/fabrics. Make sure that:

- The plug does not block drainage from the washbasin.
- The end of the drain hose is not immersed in the drained water.
- The water drains away quickly enough.

Note: Do not kink the water drain hose or put strain on it lengthways.

Connection

Drainage into a siphon

The connection point must be secured using a hose clamp with a diameter of 24 - 40 mm (available from specialist dealers).



Drainage into a washbasin
 Secure the outlet hose so that it cannot slip out.
 Elbow available from after-sales

service:

Individual part number 00655300



 Drainage into a plastic pipe with rubber bushing or into a drainage pit



Note: The plastic pipe is not standard accessory, available from specialist dealers.

Alignment

Level the appliance using a spirit level.

Incorrect levelling may result in intense noise, vibrations and "wandering".

1. Loosen the lock nuts using a wrench, by turning it in a clockwise direction.



 Check the alignment of the appliance with a spirit level, and adjust it if necessary. Change the height by turning the appliance feet. All four appliance feet must stand firmly on the ground.



3. Tighten the lock nut against the housing.

In doing so, hold the foot tight and do not adjust its height.

The lock nuts on all four appliance feet must be screwed tightly against the housing.



Electrical connection

Warning Risk of death!

There is a risk of electric shock if you touch live components.

- Never touch or hold the mains plug with wet hands.
- Only pull out the mains cable by the plug and never by the cable, as this could damage it.

Observe the following information and ensure that:

Notes

- The mains voltage and voltage indicated on the appliance (rating plate) are the same.
 The connected load and fuse required are specified on the rating plate.
- The appliance is only connected to an alternating current via a properly installed earthed socket.
- The mains plug fits the socket.
- The earthing system is properly installed.
- The mains cable is only replaced by a qualified electrician (if this is necessary). Replacement mains cables are available from the aftersales service.
- No multiple plugs/couplings or extension cables are used.
- If an earth-leakage circuit breaker is used, only a type which displays this symbol is used: Only this symbol guarantees compliance with the currently applicable regulations.
- The mains plug can be accessed at all times.
- The mains cable is not bent, squashed, modified, cut through, or in contact with heat sources.

Before washing for the first time

The appliance was inspected thoroughly before leaving the factory. To remove any residual test water, run the **Cottons 90°C** programme the first time **without** laundry.

Note:

- The appliance must have been installed and connected properly.
 → "Positioning and connecting" on page 13
- Never switch on a damaged appliance.
- 1. Insert mains plug.
- 2. Turn the water tap on.
- 3. Close the door. Do not load any laundry.
- 4. Select the Cottons 90°C programme.
- 5. Open the detergent drawer.
- 6. Pour approx. 1 litre of water into dispenser II.
- Add standard detergent to dispenser Il according to manufacturer's instructions for light soiling.
 Note: To prevent frothing, use only half the recommended amount of detergent. Do not use any woollens or mild detergents.
- 8. Close the detergent drawer.
- 9. Select DI Start/Reload .
- **10.** When the programme ends, turn the programme selector to **Off**.

Your appliance is now ready for use.

Transportation

e.g. when moving home

Preparatory work:

- 1. Turn off the water tap.
- 2. Reduce the water pressure in the supply hose. \rightarrow Page 43
- 3. Drain any residual water. \rightarrow Page 42
- 4. Disconnect the appliance from the mains.
- 5. Remove the hoses.
- 6. Empty the dispensers. Caution!

Risk of damage to the appliance caused by detergent/fabric softener leaking from the dispensers

Leaking detergent/fabric softener can prevent the appliance from working correctly, e.g. due to damage to the electronics. Empty the dispensers before transporting the appliance.

Installing the transport locks:

 Remove the covers and keep them in a safe place. Note: Use a screwdriver if necessary.





2. Insert all four sleeves.



a) Clip the mains cable securely in the holders.



b) Insert and tighten the screws.



c) Clip the hoses securely in the holders.



Before switching on the appliance again:

Notes

- The support struts must be removed.
 → "Removing the support struts" on page 16
- The transport braces must be removed.
 - → "Removing the transport locks" on page 14
- Pour approx. 1 litre of water into dispenser II, select the Drain programme and start. This will prevent detergent from flowing straight into the drain during the next wash.

Getting to know the appliance

Appliance





Detergent drawer Control panel Loading door Service flap

Control panel



- Programme default settings can be changed.
 Overview of all programme default settings → Page 33
- 2 Additional programme settings can be selected. Overview of all additional programme settings → Page 34
- 3 **N Start/Reload** button for starting, interrupting, (e.g. adding laundry) and cancelling a programme.
- 4 **Programme selector** for selecting the programme and for switching the appliance on and off.

Display panel

Programme default settings

90°	1400	
60°	1000	
40°	800	
30°	600)
20°	400	J_CCI_U_L kg
*	Ø	+
Å	ି	
Temp. °C	Spin Speed	

Display	Setting	Description	
≉ - 90°	₿ Temp.°C	Temperature that can be set in °C ♣ = cold	
Ø-1400*	© Spin Speed	Spin speed in rpm (revolutions per minute) Ø = No spin	
2:30*	Programme remaining time	Programme remaining time depends on the programme selec- tion in h:min (hours:minutes)	
0.5 - 24 h	Einish in/ Time Dry	Programme ends after h (h = hours)	
9,0* kg/ 6,0* kg	Maximum load for washing/dry- ing	Recommended load in kg	
 Depending on the selected model and pro- gramme. 			

Additional programme settings

⊞ ⊒	
-ໍ່ຕູ່- Drying Target	U 2 =0 Pre- Wash Ironing Perfect
D' 1	0 m ²
Display	Setting
$\mathbb{H}^{+}/\mathbb{H}/\mathbb{A}$	-☆- Drying Target

-	
-	A Reduced Ironing
-	= O SpeedPerfect

Status indicators for the programme progress (programme sequence)



Display	Setting
-	D∭ Start/Reload
L	Prewash
	Wash
	Rinse
6	Spin/Drain
-ờ-	Dry
8	Wrinkle guard
End	Programme end

Laundry

Preparing laundry for washing

Protecting your laundry and appliance

Caution!

Damage to the appliance/textiles

Foreign objects (e.g. coins, paper clips, needles, nails) may damage the washing or components of the appliance.

The following instructions must be observed when preparing your laundry:

- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions when dosing all detergents, cleaning aids, care products and cleaning agents.
- Do not exceed maximum load. Overfilling will impair the washing result.
- Keep detergents and agents for the pretreatment of laundry (e.g. stain remover, prewash sprays, etc.) away from the surfaces of the appliance. Using a damp cloth, immediately remove any fine spray residue and other residue or droplets.
- Empty any pockets. Remove any foreign objects.
- Remove metal parts (paper clips, etc.).
- Trousers, knitwear and knitted textiles, e.g. jersey garments, T-shirts or sweatshirts, should be turned inside out.
- Ensure that underwired bras are appliance-washable.
- Wash delicates in a net or bag (tights, underwired bras, etc).
- Close zips, button up covers.
- Brush sand out of pockets and collars.
- Remove curtain fittings or place in a net/bag.

Sorting laundry

Sort your laundry according to the care instructions and manufacturer's information on the care labels, depending on:

- Type of fabric/fibre
- Colour

Note: Laundry may discolour. Wash white and coloured items separately. Wash new coloured items separately the first time you wash them.

Soiling

Wash laundry with the same level of soiling together.

- Light: No need to pretreat, adjust the =^① SpeedPerfect setting if necessary.
- Normal
- Heavy: Load less laundry, need to pretreat or soak laundry firstly.
- Stains: Remove/pretreat stains while they are fresh. First dab with soapy water; do not rub. Then wash the items of laundry with the appropriate programme. Stubborn or dried-in stains can sometimes only be removed by washing several times.
- Symbols on the care labels
 - Suitable for normal washing process;
 - e.g. Cottons programme
 - A gentle washing process is required;
 - e.g. Easy Care programme
 - An especially gentle washing process is required; e.g. Delicates/ Silk programme
 - Suitable for washing by hand; e.g. Wool @ programme
 - 🕸 Do not machine wash.

Preparing laundry for drying

Note: To ensure an even drying result, sort the laundry according to the:

- Type of fabric
- Care symbols which are indicated on the care labels.

Only dry laundry which is labelled "dryer-proof" or which has the following care symbols:

- 🖸 : You can select ☆ Intensive Dry
- 🖸 : You can select ☆ Gentle Dry

The following textiles must not be dried:

- Delicates (silk, synthetic curtains).
- Textiles which contain foam rubber or similar materials.
- Textiles which were treated with flammable liquids, e.g. with stain remover, petroleum ether, thinners. Risk of explosion!
- Textiles which still contain hairspray or similar substances.

Notes

- Before drying, hand-washed textiles must be spun at the appropriate spin speed.
- Before drying, spin at the optimum speed. A spin speed of more than 1000 rpm is recommended for cotton, more than 800 rpm for easycare textiles.
- Do not iron washing immediately after drying. It is recommended to roll the washing up first to distribute residual moisture evenly.
- To ensure a good drying performance, quilts, terry cloths and other large textiles should be dried separately.
- Do not exceed the maximum load.

Starching

Note: Laundry should not be treated with fabric softener.

- 1. Switch on the appliance.
- 2. Select the **Rinse** programme.
- Measure starch into dispenser ⊕ in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions (clean first if necessary).
- 4. Touch the D Start/Reload button.

Dyeing/bleaching

Dye should only be used in normal household quantities. Salt may damage stainless steel. Always follow the dye manufacturer's instructions.

Do **not** use the appliance to bleach clothes.

Detergents and care products

You can protect your appliance and your laundry by selecting and using the correct detergents and care products. You can use all detergents and care products which are suitable for your appliance.

Note: Please read the safety information \rightarrow *Page 5* to ensure that you use the appliance safely.

The manufacturer's instructions for use and dosage can be found on the packaging.

Detergent recommendation

This information is intended to help you to choose the right detergent for your items.

Notes

- Only use liquid detergents that are self-flowing
- Do not mix different liquid detergents
- Do not mix detergent and fabric softener
- Do not use products which have developed a top layer or are highly congealed
- Do not use products containing solvents, caustic agents or volatile substances (e.g. bleach)
- Use dyes sparingly as salt may damage stainless steel
- Do not use bleaching agents in the appliance

Fabrics	Detergent	Programme	Temperature
Heat-resistant white fab- rics made from cotton or linen	Standard detergent with optical brighteners	Cottons	From cold up to 90 °C
Coloured fabrics made from linen or cotton	Detergent for colours without bleach or optical brighteners	Cottons	From cold up to 60 °C
Coloured fabrics made from easy-care fabrics or synthetic materials	Detergent for colours/delicates without optical brighteners	Easy Care	From cold up to 60 °C
Delicate fabrics made from silk or viscose	Delicates	Delicates/Silk	From cold up to 40 °C
Wool	Detergent for Woollens	Wool	From cold up to 40 °C

Tip: Visit www.cleanright.eu to find further information on detergents, care products and cleaning agents for domestic use.

P Overview of programmes

Selectable programme

Pro	gramme/Type of laundry	Options/Information
Name of the programme Brief explanation of the programme and for which fabrics it is suitable.		Max. load for washing/ Max. load for drying
		Max. load as kg depending on the model and the pro- gramme
		selectable temperature* as °C
		selectable spin speed* in rpm
		possible additional programme settings*
		possible setting for drying* (De)selectable \checkmark , not selectable -
		softener
Cottons Hard-wearing fabrics, heat-resistant fabrics made of cotton		9,0 (5,0**) kg/6,0 kg
		≉ - 90 °C
or linen.		400 - 1400 rpm
	The symbol (*) (drum clean information signal) flashes if you have not used any programme at a temperature of 60°C or higher for an extended period. Do not load any laundry, and select the Cottons 90°C programme to clean and care for the drum and the outer tub, then the	
		$\dot{\Phi}$ Drying Target \checkmark ($\mathbb{H}^+\checkmark$, $\mathbb{H}\checkmark$, $\overset{\frown}{\frown}\checkmark$)
		possible
	symbol will disappear. \rightarrow Page 44 Switching the drum clean information signal on/off	
	→ "Appliance settings" on page 39	
*	Depending on the model and the programme.	

** Reduced load with = O SpeedPerfect additional programme setting.

Programme/Type of laundry	Options/Information
Eco 40-60	9.0 kg/6.0 kg
Suitable for washing normally soiled cotton, linen and mixed	-
fabric textiles, and drying it to be immediately stored in a cup-	400 - 1400 rpm
Notes	Prewash, 🛆 Reduced Ironing
Textiles which are washable based on the laundry sym-	$\dot{\nabla}$ Drying Target \checkmark (\mathbb{H}^{+} \checkmark , \mathbb{H} \checkmark , $\overset{\frown}{\frown}$ \checkmark)
 bol from 40°C 100 pt to 60°C 100 cm be washed together in the same cycle. The washing performance conforms to the highest possible washing performance class as defined by the legal standards. To reach the optimal energy efficiency with the best possible washing performance, the washing 	possible
temperature is automatically adjusted according to the	
 Wash and dry programme can be achieved by selecting 	
Eco 40-60 programme and activating 🔅 Drying Tar-	
get. Fasy Care	4 N ka/2 5 ka
Textiles made of synthetic materials or blended fabrics.	₩ - 60 °C
	400 - 1400 rpm
	Prewash. A Reduced Ironing.
	= ① SpeedPerfect
	$\dot{\mathcal{R}}$ Drying Target \checkmark (\mathbb{H}^{+} \checkmark , \mathbb{H} \checkmark , $\overset{\frown}{\frown}$ \checkmark)
	possible
Mixed Load	4,0 kg/2,5 kg
Mixed load of cottons and synthetic fabrics.	≉ - 60 °C
	400 - 1400 rpm
	
	$\dot{\mathcal{R}}$ Drying Target \checkmark ($\mathbb{H}^+\checkmark$, $\mathbb{H}\checkmark$, $\dot{\supseteq}\checkmark$)
	possible
AllergyPlus	6,5 kg/5,0 kg
Hard-wearing fabrics made of cotton or linen.	≉-60 °C
dienically clean and especially kind to sensitive skin thanks to	400 - 1400 rpm
the longer wash cycle at a defined temperature, higher water	
	$\dot{\mathbf{x}}$ Drying Target \checkmark ($\mathbb{H}^+\checkmark$, $\mathbb{H}\checkmark$, $\mathbf{a}\checkmark$)
	possible
* Depending on the model and the programme.	

** Reduced load with = O SpeedPerfect additional programme setting.
Programme/Type of laundry	Options/Information
Super Quick 15'/ Wash & Dry 60'	2,0 kg/1,0 kg
For small amount lightly soiled garments made of cotton,	≉ - 40 °C
unen, synthetic or blended fabrics. Approx. 15 mins for washing. If drying function is selected, it's followed by	400 - 1000 rpm
another approx. 45 mins drying process.	-
Note: The default programme is Super Quick 15' . You can	☆ Drying Target 🗸 (⊞⁺-, ⊞ 🗸, 冾 -)
☆ Drying Target button.	possible
Rinse	-/-
For rinsing with a subsequent spin cycle.	-
	Ø - 1400 rpm
	Reduced Ironing
	$\dot{\mathfrak{P}}$ Drying Target \checkmark ($\mathbb{H}^+\checkmark$, $\mathbb{H}\checkmark$, $\dot{\frown}\checkmark$)
	possible
Spin/Drain	-/-
For spinning with a selectable spin speed and subsequent	-
graining. If you have selected 6, it will run Drain pro-	Ø - 1400 rpm
spin cycle.	Reduced Ironing
	$\dot{\mathfrak{P}}$ Drying Target \checkmark ($\mathbb{H}^+\checkmark$, $\mathbb{H}\checkmark$, $\dot{\frown}\checkmark$)
	not possible
Wool 🕹	2,0 kg/1,0 kg
Hand- or appliance-washable fabrics that are made of wool	≉ - 40 °C
or contain wool;	Ø - 800 rpm
shrinking, with longer pauses in the programme (during	-
which the items rest in the water).	🔅 Drying Target 🗸 (🖽+, 🖽 -, 🥭 🗸)
Note: In order to prevent clothing shrink, after drying still	possible
as soon as possible after the end of the programme to dry.	
Delicates/Silk	2,0 kg/-
For delicate, washable fabrics, e.g. made of silk, satin, syn-	≉ - 40 °C
thetic fibres or blends (e.g. silk blouses, silk scarves).	Ø - 800 rpm
	🕛 Prewash, 🕭 Reduced Ironing
	-☆- Drying Target -
	possible
 Depending on the model and the programme. ** Reduced load with =^① SpeedPerfect additional program 	nme setting.

Programme/Type of laundry	Options/Information
Iron Assist 🖑	-/1,0 kg
Odor removal and wrinkle reduction program, suitable for wool, linen, suits, etc. which do not need frequent washing.	-
 It is recommended to hand the clothing in a ventilated 	-
environment for 3-5mins after program finished. In case	-ờ- Drying Target -
 of continuously using the refresh program, it is recommended to run a washing cycle between each refresh program cycle to remove odor from the appliance. The detergent can not be added for this programme. 	not possible
🔆 My Time Dry	-/6,0 kg
Mixed fabrics; for lightly soiled laundry made of cotton and	-
synthetics.	-
minimum 20 minutes. The maximum programme length is	-
120 minutes, it can be reduced in 10-minute increments.	-ờ़- Drying Target -
 Notes The ⁽¹⁾ Finish in/ Time Dry programme default setting can not be selected for this programme. This programme is only used for drying process, the detergent can not be added. It is recommended to use automatic drying function to get better drying result and save energy. 	not possible
-☆- Gentle Dry	-/2,5 kg
Single gentle dry programme for drying garments with lower	•
- by selecting \mathbb{H}^+ to achieve automatic curboard+ dry result.	-
- by selecting III to achieve automatic cupboard dry result.	-
- by selecting 🛆 to achieve automatic iron dry result.	$\dot{\varphi}$ - Drying Target \checkmark ($\mathbb{H}^+ \checkmark$, $\mathbb{H} \checkmark$, $ \checkmark$)
	not possible
-☆- Intensive Dry	-/6,0 kg
Single normal dry program for drying garments with higher	-
- by selecting \mathbb{H}^+ to achieve automatic curboard+ dry result	-
- by selecting III to achieve automatic cupboard dry result.	-
- by selecting To achieve automatic iron dry result.	\Leftrightarrow Drying Target \checkmark ($\mathbb{H}^{+}\checkmark$, $\mathbb{H}\checkmark$, \bigcirc \checkmark) not possible

Depending on the model and the programme. Reduced load with 르**ෆ SpeedPerfect** additional programme setting.

Drying table

	Estimated drying time (min)				
Recommended drying programme	Drying load (kg)	 (IronDry)	⊞ (CupboardDry)	⊡⁺ (CupboardDry+)	
	1.0-2.0	45-60	50-80	65-100	
-¤- Intensive Dry	2.0-4.0	60-90	80-140	100-160	
	4.0-6.0	90-140	140-200	160-270	
č Gontlo Dry	0.5-1.5	35-45	50-70	65-100	
	1.5-2.5	45-55	70-100	100-125	

i Drying time table is only for reference. For wash + dry program, washing duration shall be added for total program time.

i The time listed above is the reference value, the actual drying effect may be affected by the clothing type, clothing weight, dehydration degree and ambient temperature.

i In order to achieve uniform drying effect, it is recommended to distinguish between heavy and lightweight clothing. For example, separate the thick towel and the shirt to dry.

i ⊞⁺ (CupboardDry+) is recommended for drying bulky or heavy clothing.

i In order to reduce the folding of clothing after drying, it is recommended to put a small amount of clothing drying.

 ${f i}$ Please refer to the panel display for the drying time of the programme not mentioned in the table above.

P+ Programme default settings

You can change the default settings for selected programmes. The settings can be changed even while the selected programme is running. The effects depending on the progress of the programme.

Temp.°C

Before and after the programme starts, you can change the temperature setting, depending on what stage the programme is in, by adjusting the desired temperature on the display.

The maximum temperature that can be set depends on the programme that has been selected.

Spin Speed

Depending on what stage the programme is in, you can change the spin speed (in rpm; revolutions per minute) before and during the programme by adjusting the desired speed on the display.

setting \mathscr{D} : \mathscr{D} ="No spin". The rinsing water is drained but there is no final spin. The laundry stays wet inside the drum, e.g. for items that should not be spun.

You can select "No spin" to prevent creasing if the laundry will not be taken out of the appliance immediately after the programme has ended.

The maximum speed that can be set depending on the model and the programme that has been selected. ③ Finish in/Time Dry

Before starting the programme, you can preselect the programme end ("Finish in" time) in 0.5h (h = hour) increments (between "minimum selectable ending time" and 9.5h) or 1 hour increments (between 10h and 24h) up to a maximum of 24 hours.

- To do this:
- 2. Select the ^(C) Finish in/Time Dry button repeatedly until the required number of hours is displayed.
- Select the D**Start/Reload** button. The programme starts. The selected number of hours (e.g. 8h) is shown in the display panel and counts down until the programme starts. The duration of the programme is then displayed.

Note: The length of the programme is automatically adjusted when the programme is running. Changes to the programme default settings or additional programme settings may also change the programme duration.

After starting the programme (if a "Finish in" time has been selected and the programme has not yet started), you can change the preselected number of hours as follows:

- 1. Select the DI Start/Reload button.
- 2. Select the ⁽⁾ Finish in/Time Dry button repeatedly to change the number of hours.
- 3. Select the D Start/Reload button.
- * Depending on the model

P⁺ Additional programme settings

Note: You can find possible additional programme settings in the overview; these differ depending on the model.

By selecting additional programme settings, you can better adapt the washing/drying process to your items of laundry.

The settings can be selected or deselected depending on the progress of the programme.

The button indicator lamps light up if a setting is activated.

The settings are not retained after the appliance is switched off.

☆ Drying Target

Touch 🌣 **Drying Target** to activate or deactivate the drying function. Washing and drying without interruption is possible when the function is activated (only for **Optional drying**

programmes). There are three drying target mode can be selected as desired:

(**CupboardDry**): For single-layer fabrics. Garments can be folded or hung up in a cupboard. It is the standard drying target mode. In this mode the drying time is automatically set according to the amount of laundry to be dried.

 \mathbb{H}^* (**CupboardDry+**): For fabrics made of thick, multilayered items of clothing, which need to be dried longer. Garments can be folded or hung up in a cupboard. Laundry more dry than Cupboard dry.

(IronDry): For delicate laundry. Fabrics suitable for ironing (iron fabrics in order to avoid creasing). Garments can be additionally hung up to dry.

The drying process would proceed followed washing process when the ☆ **Drying Target** activated. If you only need the individual drying progamme, you can select ☆ **Intensive Dry**, ☆ **Gentle Dry** or ☆ **My Time Dry**.

Notes

 ■ Do not exceed the maximum loads for drying.
 Overview of programmes
 → "Selectable programme"

 \rightarrow "Selectable programme" on page 28

 Maximum spin speed for programme with drying phase will be selected automatically to obtain a good drying result.

L Prewash

Prewash for heavily soiled laundry.

Touch U **Prewash** to activate or deactivate it.

Note: Put the detergent into dispenser I and II.

A Reduced Ironing

A special operation using reduced spin speed followed by fluffing to help reduce creasing.

Touch A Reduced Ironing to activate or deactivate it.

Note: If **Areduced Ironing** has been activated, the laundry will have retained a higher than average level of moisture after spinning.

= SpeedPerfect

Washing in a shorter time while achieving a washing result that is consistent with the normal performance.

Touch =^① **SpeedPerfect** to activate or deactivate this additional programme setting.

Note: With the = SpeedPerfect

additional programme setting activated, the maximum load of washing will be reduced, and extra water will be needed for the washing process.

Section 2 Sectio

Preparing the appliance

The appliance was tested before delivery. To remove residual water from the test procedure, the first wash cycle should be run without laundry using the **Cottons 90°C** programme.

 \rightarrow "Before washing for the first time" on page 20

Notes

- Never switch on a damaged appliance!
- Inform customer service!
- 1. Insert mains plug.

Warning Risk of death from electric shock! Risk of death if live parts are touched.

- Never pull out the mains plug by tugging the power cord.
- Insert/pull out the mains plug with dry hands only.
- 2. Turn the water tap on.



3. Open the appliance door.



Select programme/switch on the appliance

Note: If you have activated the childproof lock, you must first deactivate it before you can set a programme.

Use the programme selector to select the required programme. The programme selector can be rotated in either direction.

The appliance is switched on.

The **programme default settings** for the selected programme alternately appear in the display panel:

- The maximum load and
- the duration of the programme and
- . ..

Placing laundry into the drum

Open the door, place laundry in the drum, make sure that no items of laundry are trapped between the door and the rubber seal, and close the door.





Notes

- Unfold and load presorted items of laundry. Mix large and small items. Washing items of different size distribute themselves better during the spin cycle. Individual items of washing may cause an unbalanced load.
- Observe the maximum specified load. Overfilling adversely affects the washing/drying result and promotes creasing.

Dosing and adding detergent and care products

Caution!

Damage to the appliance

Detergents and agents for the pretreatment of laundry (e.g. stain remover, prewash sprays, etc.) may damage the surfaces of the appliance. Keep these agents away from the surfaces of the appliance. Using a damp cloth, immediately remove any fine spray residue and other residue/ droplets.

Dosing

Dose the detergents and care products according to:

- water hardness (ask your water supply company),
- the manufacturer's specifications on the packaging,
- the amount of laundry,
- soiling.

Filling the dispensers

1. Pull out the detergent drawer.

Warning Eye / skin irritation!

If the detergent drawer is opened while the appliance is running, detergent/care product may run out. Carefully open the drawer. If detergent/care product comes into contact with eyes or skin, rinse thoroughly.

If accidentally swallowed, seek medical advice.

2. Pour in detergent and/or cleaning product.



- Dispenser IDetergent for pretreat and
clothing disinfectant. (only for
the appliance with pretreat and
disinfectant function)Dispenser SSoftener, starch. Do not exceed
the maximum load.Dispenser IIDetergent for main wash, water
softener, bleach, stain remover.
- Dispenser **A*** For dosing liquid detergent.

*depending on the model

Notes

- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions when dosing all detergents, cleaning aids, care products and cleaning agents.
- Dilute viscous fabric softener and fabric conditioner with water. This will prevent blockages.
- Be careful when opening the detergent drawer while the appliance is running.

Measuring aid A* for liquid detergent

*depending on the model

Position the measuring aid A for measuring the correct amount of liquid detergent:

1. Pull out the detergent drawer. Press down the insert and fully remove the drawer.



2. Slide the measuring aid forwards, fold it down and click it into place.



3. Reinsert the drawer.

Note: Do not use the measuring aid for gel detergents and washing powder, or for programmes with pretreat or when "Finish in" time is selected.

For models without a measuring aid,

pour the liquid detergent into the appropriate dispenser and place it in the drum.

Starting the programme

Touch and hold **▷II Start/Reload** button for 1[~]2 seconds, then release the button. The programme starts and the appliance door is locked.

The finish-in time is shown in the display panel and counts down until the programme starts. After the programme has started, the programme duration is displayed. And the symbols for the programme progress are lighting up.

Childproof lock

You can lock the appliance to prevent the settings you have set from being changed inadvertently. To do this, activate the childproof lock.

To activate the childproof lock:

After the programme starts, Touch and hold the =O SpeedPerfect and O Finish in/Time Dry buttons for 3 seconds. The symbol \sim lights up in the display panel.

- Ights up: The childproof lock is activated.
- If the programme and programme settings are adjusted while childproof lock is activated.

Note: When the programme ends, End is displayed. The door is unlocked. ∽ symbol remain on to remind you to deactivate the childproof lock.

To deactivate the childproof lock:

Touch and hold the =^① **SpeedPerfect** and ^① **Finish in/Time Dry** buttons until the symbol [∞] disappears.

Adding/removing laundry

After starting the programme (only for washing), you can add or remove laundry if necessary.

Touch the \bigcup Start/Reload button. The appliance checks whether reloading is possible.

If the following appears on the display panel:

- The symbol lights up, reloading is not possible.

To continue the programme, touch the ▷**II Start/Reload** button. The programme continues automatically.

Notes

- Do not leave the door open for too long when adding laundry as water from the laundry may leak out.
- For safety reasons, the door remains locked when the water level or temperature is high, or while the drum is turning, and it is not possible to add laundry during this time.

Changing the programme

If you have started the wrong programme by mistake, you can change the programme as follows:

- 1. Touch the DI Start/Reload button.
- 2. Select another programme.
- 3. And touch the ▷ Start/Reload button again. The new programme starts from the beginning.

Note: If drying is activated, after touching the D**Start/Reload** button, when the H_{DL} is displayed, waiting for the appliance running to cool down the laundry till the H_{DL} disappears, then select another programme.

Cancel the programme

For programmes washing at high temperatures:

- 1. Touch the **DII** Start/Reload button.
- 2. To cool down laundry: Select Rinse.
- 3. Touch the DI Start/Reload button.

For programmes washing at low temperatures:

- **1.** Touch the **DII** Start/Reload button.
- 2. Select Spin/Drain.
- 3. Touch the DI Start/Reload button.

For programmes in drying process:

- 1. Touch the DI Start/Reload button.
- If the Hot on the display panel, waiting for the appliance running to cool down the laundry till the Hot disappears.

Programme end

End lights up on the display and – and O displays are off.

If you have selected \mathscr{D} , the water is only drained after rinse process, no spin cycle.

Notes

- If Hat flashes in the display before the drying programme ends, the temperature in the drum is high. The programme for cooling the drum runs until the temperature in the drum has dropped.
- If you do not take laundry out within 15 mins after drying process finished, wrinkle guard process will start to prevent laundry getting wrinkled. The process lasts about 30 minutes. 0:00, £RP, ఓ and ᢄnd will be displayed alternately on the display and ☺ symbol will be displayed as the status symbol. You can touch any button to terminate this process, then the door will be released and laundry can be taken out.

Removing laundry/switching off the appliance

- 1. Set programme selector to Off.
- 2. Open the door and remove the laundry.
- 3. Turn off the water tap. Note: Not required for Aqua-Stop models.

Notes

- Do not leave any items of laundry in the drum. They may shrink in the next wash or discolour another item.
- Remove any foreign objects from the drum and the rubber seal - risk of rustina.
- Wipe the rubber seal dry.



- Leave the door and detergent drawer open so that any residual water can evaporate.
- Always wait until the programme ends, as the appliance could still be locked. Then switch the appliance on and wait for it to unlock.

I Appliance settings

You can change the following settings:

- The volume of the end signal.
- The volume of the button signal.
- Switching the drum care information signal on/off.

You will need to activate the setting mode in order to change these settings.





Activate setting mode:

- 1. Set the programme selector to position 1. The appliance is switched on.
- 2. Touch and hold the [©] Spin Speed button and, at the same time, turn the programme selector clockwise to position 2. Release the Spin Speed button.

The setting mode is activated and the preset setting appears in the display panel.

Changing the volume and drum care information

Use the ⁽⁾ Finish in/ Time Dry button to change the following settings at the corresponding programme selector positions:

- 2: The volume of the end signal.
- 3: The volume of the button signals.

$$0 = off, 1 = quiet, 2 = medium, 3 = 4 = verv loud$$

dium, 3 = loud,very loud

- 4: Switching the drum care information signal on/off.
- 0n on 0FF off

Exiting setting mode

You can now end the process and set the programme selector to the **Off** position. The settings are saved.

· Sensors

Unbalanced load detection system

The automatic unbalanced load detection system detects imbalances and ensures even distribution of the laundry by repeatedly starting and stopping drum spinning.

If the laundry is extremely unevenly distributed, the spin speed is reduced or the spin cycle is not performed for safety reasons.

Note: Place large and small items of laundry evenly in the drum.

Cleaning and maintenance

Marning Risk of death!

There is a risk of electric shock if touch live components.

Turn the programme selector to **Off**. Pull out the mains plug.

Caution!

Fire and explosion hazard!

Toxic vapours can be produced by cleaning agents that contain solvents, e.g. cleaning solvent. Do not use cleaning agents that contain solvents.

Caution!

The appliance may be damaged!

Cleaning agents that contain solvents, e.g. cleaning solvent, can damage surfaces and components in the appliance.

Do not use cleaning agents that contain solvents.

Appliance housing/control panel

- Remove the detergent residue immediately.
- Wipe the housing and the control panel with a soft, damp cloth.
- Do not use abrasive cloths, sponges or detergents (stainless steel cleaner).
- Do not clean the appliance with a water jet.

Drum

Warning Risk of injury/material damage/ damage to the appliance!

Permanently washing at low temperatures and a lack of ventilation for the appliance may damage the drum and cause injury.

Regularly run a programme for cleaning the drum or wash at temperatures of at least 60°C.

Leave the appliance to dry after every operation with the door open, and leave the detergent drawer to dry.

Use chlorine-free cleaning agents, do not use steel wool.

If there are odours in the appliance, or to clean the drum, run the **Cottons 90°C** programme without laundry.

Descaling

Descaling should not be necessary if the detergent is measured out correctly. However, if it is required, follow the manufacturer's instructions for the descaling agent. Suitable descalers can be obtained via our website or from customer services.

Emptying the detergent draw, cleaning the detergent drawer and its housing

If the appliance contains detergent or fabric softener residues:

1. Pull out the detergent drawer. Press down the insert and fully remove the drawer.



2. To remove the insert: Push the insert upwards from below with your finger.



3. Clean the detergent dispenser tray and insert with water and a brush, and dry it. Clean the inside of the housing as well.



 Fit the insert and lock it in place (push the cylinder onto the guide pin).



5. Push in the detergent drawer.



Note: Leave the detergent drawer open so that any residual water can evaporate.

Drain pump is blocked

Note: Turn the water tap off to prevent more water from flowing in and to ensure that it is drained via the pump.

Warning Risk of scalding!

When you wash at high temperatures, the water gets very hot. If you come into contact with the hot water, you may be scalded.

Allow the water to cool down first.

- 1. Turn the programme selector to Off. Pull out the mains plug.
- 2. Open the service flap.



3. Take the drain hose out of the retainer.

Remove the sealing cap and pour the water out into a suitable container.

Replace the sealing cap and place the drain hose back in the retainer.



4. Carefully unscrew the pump cover; residual water may leak out. Clean the interior, pump cover thread and pump housing. The impeller in the drain pump must be able to rotate.



5. Refit and screw on the pump cover. The handle must be in a vertical position.



6. Close the service flap.



Note: To prevent unused detergent from flowing straight into the drain during the next wash: Pour 1 litre of water into dispenser II and start the **Drain** programme.

The drain hose at the siphon is blocked

- 1. Turn the programme selector to **Off**. Pull out the mains plug.
- 2. Loosen the hose clamp. Carefully remove the drain hose; residual water may leak out.
- **3.** Clean the drain hose and siphon connecting piece.



4. Re-attach the drain hose and secure the connection point using the hose clamp.

Filter in the water supply is blocked

Release water pressure in the supply hose:

- 1. Turn off the water tap.
- Select the Cottons (activate =⑦ SpeedPerfect setting) programme. Note: If your appliance with intelligent dosing system*, you also need to deactivate the intelligent
- dosing system.
 3. Select the D**II** Start/Reload button. Allow the programme to run for approx. 40 seconds.
- 4. Turn the programme selector to **Off**.
- 5. Pull out the mains plug.

Clean the filters:

1. Disconnect the hose from the rear of the appliance.



2. Use pliers to remove the filter.



3. Clean the filter with a small brush.



4. Connect the hose and check for leaks.



* Depending on the model

Faults and what to do about them

Emergency release

E.g. power outage or in the event of a loss of power

The programme continues when the power supply is restored.

However, if the laundry has to be removed, the appliance door can be opened as follows:

Warning Risk of scalding!

When you are washing at high temperatures, there is a risk of scalding if you come into contact with hot water and laundry.

If possible, leave it to cool down first.

Warning Risk of injury!

Reaching into the drum while it is still turning may cause hand injuries. Do not reach into the drum when it is turning.

Wait until the drum has stopped turning.

Caution! Water damage!

Any escaping water may cause water damage.

Do not open the door if water can be seen through the glass.

- 1. Turn the programme selector to **Off**. Pull out the mains plug.
- 2. Open the service flap.



- **3.** Drain the water. \rightarrow Page 42
- 4. Pull the emergency release downwards with a tool and release. The door can then be opened.



Information on the display panel

Display	Cause/Remedy
¢	 Flashes fast + signal: The door was opened and the water level is too high. Close the door, continue the programme with D Start/Reload button or select Drain. Flashes slowly: The door lock temperature is too high to open the door. Wait approx. 30 seconds until the door lock temperature cools down.
Кос	The temperature in the drum is too high. Wait for the appliance running to cool down the laundry till the H_{\Box} disappears on the display panel, then the door can be opened.

Display	Cause/Remedy
泽	 Flashes (no water supply): Water tap turned on? Filter in the water supply is blocked? → "Filter in the water supply is blocked" on page 43 Is the supply hose kinked or trapped? Lights up (low water pressure): For information only. This will not affect the programme progress. The programme duration is extended.
🖙 lights up	The childproof lock is activated – deactivate it.
The symbol ঔ flashes	 Run the Cottons 90°C programme to clean and care for the drum and the outer tub. Notes Run the programme without laundry. Use washing powder or a detergent containing bleach. To prevent foaming, only use half the amount of detergent recommended by the detergent manufacturer. Do not use detergent designed for woollens or delicates. Switching the drum care information signal on/off. → Page 39
E:36 alternating with -10	 Drain pipe or water drain hose is blocked. Clean the drain pipe and the water outlet hose. Drain pipe or water drain hose is caught or jammed. Ensure that the drain pipe and water drain hose are not kinked or trapped. The drain pump is blocked. → "Drain pump is blocked" on page 42 The drain hose at the siphon is blocked.
E:35 alternating with -10 (Suitable for spe- cial models)	There is water in the base trough, the appliance is leaking. Turn off the tap. Call customer services.
H:95 alternating with End when programme is finished	No water detected in drying phase, may get bad drying result. → "Filter in the water supply is blocked" on page 43
H:32 alternating with End when programme is finished	The unbalanced load detection system has interrupted the spin cycle because the laundry is unevenly distributed. Distribute small and large items of laundry evenly in the drum.
Other displays	Turn the programme selector to Off , wait for five seconds and then switch it on again. If the display appears again, call customer services.

Faults and what to do about them

Faults	Cause/Remedy
Water is leaking from the appliance.	Attach the drain hose correctly or replace it.Tighten the screw fitting on the supply hose.
The door cannot be opened.	 (Rinse hold = no final drain) is activated (depending on the model). Continue the programme by selecting Spin/Drain and pressing D Start/Reload. The temperature in drum is too high to open the door. The safety function is activated. Stop the programme? The water level in drum is too high. Can the door only be opened by the emergency release? → "Emergency release" on page 44
The appliance is not filling with water. Detergent is not being dis- pensed.	 Programme does not start? Is the tap turned on? Could the filter in the water supply be blocked? → "Filter in the water supply is blocked" on page 43 Note: If an additional water filter has been installed (depending on the model), check for contaminants and clean if required → separate installation and cleaning instruction for water filter. Is the supply hose kinked or trapped?
The programme will not start.	 Have you touched the DI Start/Reload button or selected Finish in/ Time Dry? Is the door closed? Childproof lock activated? Deactivate childproof lock. Shop mode activated? If the display shows SHD for 5 s after you have switched on the appliance, the appliance is in shop mode. Wait for the display message SHD to disappear. Touch and hold DI Start/Reload for at least 5 s. DFF will appear in the display panel. Turn the programme selector to Off. Now you already turned off the shop mode. You can use the appliance now as usual.
The programme has started and the drum is rotating, but the drum is not filling with water.	Not a fault – Some programme specifically detect and weigh the load after the programme has started in order to calculate the optimum amount of water for washing. The drum will then start filling with water.

Faults	Cause/Remedy			
The water is not draining.	 Drain pipe or water drain hose is blocked. Clean the drain pipe and the water drain hose. Drain pipe or water drain hose is caught or jammed. Ensure that the drain pipe and the water drain hose are not kinked or trapped. Could the drain pump be blocked? → "Drain pump is blocked" on page 42 Could the drain hose at the siphon be blocked? → "The drain hose at the siphon be blocked? → "The drain hose at the siphon is blocked" on page 43 Could the programme by selecting Spin/Drain and pressing DI Start/Reload. The water drain hose is connected too high. Install the water drain hose at a maximum height of 1 meter. → Page 16 			
Water is not visible in the drum.	Not a fault – the water is below the visible area.			
The wrong detergent/fab- ric softener has been poured into the dis- penser(s).	Empty the dispenser(s), clean it/them and pour in the correct product. — "Emptying the detergent draw, cleaning the detergent drawer and its house ing" on page 41			
Detergent/fabric softener has congealed in the dis- pensers.	Empty the dispenser(s), clean it/them and pour in the correct product.			
Foam is leaking from the detergent drawer.	Too much detergent used? Mix 1 tablespoon of fabric softener with ½ litre of water and pour into dispenser II. (Not for outdoor, sports and down-filled textiles!) Reduce detergent dosage for the next wash cycle. Use commercially available low foam detergent and care product which are suitable for machine.			
Repeated, intensive foam- ing.	Have you used too much detergent? Add less detergent in the next time you run a wash cycle with the same load.			
Detergent/fabric softener drips off the seal and col- lects on the door or in the seal fold.	There is too much detergent/fabric softener in the dispensers. Do not fill th dispensers above the max. mark.			
The spin result is not sat- isfactory. Laundry wet/too damp.	 Not a fault - the unbalanced load detection system has interrupted the spin cycle because the laundry is unevenly distributed. Distribute small and large items of laundry evenly in the drum. Is A Reduced Ironing additional programme setting selected (depending on the model)? Is Silent additional programme setting or Silent programme selected (depending on the model)? Is the selected speed too low? 			

Faults	Cause/Remedy				
The spin cycle runs sev- eral times.	Not a fault – the unbalanced load detection system is adjusting an imbalance.				
The programme is taking longer than usual.	 Not a fault – the unbalanced load detection system is adjusting an imbalance by repeatedly distributing the laundry. Not a fault – the foam detection system is activated – a rinse cycle has been switched on. 				
The length of the pro- gramme changes during the wash/dry cycle.	Not a fault – the programme sequence is optimised for the specific washing/ drying process. This may change the length of the programme shown on the display panel.				
Odours, stain formation in	Run the Cottons 90°C programme without laundry.				
the appliance.	Add washing powder or a detergent containing bleach.				
	Note: To prevent foaming, only use half the amount of detergent recommended by the detergent manufacturer. Do not use detergents designed for woollens or delicates.				
Loud noises, vibrations and appliance "move- ment" during the spin cycle.	 Is the appliance aligned? → "Alignment" on page 19 Are the appliance's feet fixed? Secure the appliance's feet. Have the transport locks been removed? → "Removing the transport locks" on page 14 				
The display panel indica- tor lights do not work while the appliance is run- ning.	 Has there been a power failure? Have the fuses blown? Reset/replace the fuses. If the fault occurs repeatedly, call customer services. 				
There is detergent residue on the laundry.	 Some phosphate-free detergents contain water-insoluble residue. Select Rinse or brush the laundry after washing. 				
Spin during the drying phase.	This is an innovative process known as thermal spinning used to reduce energy consumption during the drying phase. It is designed like this, please wait until program finished.				
Fluff found on the laundry.	Run the Cottons \circledast (cold) programme without laundry and detergent to remove fluff which have accumulated inside the drum during the previous drying cycle.				
Water inlet noise during the drying phase.	The washer dryer uses water condensation technology, water is constantly needed to dry the laundry. Therefore the water tap must be on all the time, till the end of the drying phase.				
Drying duration extended.	 Run the Cottons * (cold) programme to remove fluff which has collected in the washer drum during the drying phase. If the ambient temperature is higher than 30 °C, this may extend the drying time. Insufficient air circulation in the room may increase the drying time. Ventilate the room. 				
Drying programme does not start.	Drying additional programme setting not selected?Door not closed properly?				

Faults	Cause/Remedy
Creasing.	 Creasing occurs when you have exceeded the maximum load or selected the wrong program for the type of fabric. All the required information can be found in the programme overview table. Remove clothes immediately after drying; creasing may occur if they are left in the drum.
The drying result is not satisfactory (laundry is not dry enough).	 After the end of the programme, warm laundry feels damper than it actually is. Spread the laundry out and allow the heat to disperse. Excessively high ambient temperature (above 30 °C) or inadequate ventilation in the room in which the washer dryer is situated. The laundry has not been spun well enough before drying. Always set the highest selectable spin speed for the particular washing programme. Washer dryer overloaded: Observe the recommendations for the maximum load in the programme table and on the load display. Do not overload the washer dryer, as the maximum load for the drying phase is less than the maximum load for the wash cycle. Unload the washer dryer after washing with the maximum load and divide the laundry into two drying cycles. The power supply voltage is too low (below 200 V) – provide a suitable power supply. The water pressure is low. According to water condensing principle, low water pressure will cause evaporated steam to not condense properly and completely. The water tap is closed during drying. Due to the use of the water condensation technology for drying, please keep the connected water tap open during the drying process, otherwise proper drying cannot be guaranteed. Thick multilayered textiles or textiles with thick fillings dry easily on the surface, but not inside. This equalisation process may take longer.
If you cannot rectify a fault is required:	yourself (after turning the programme selector to Off and on again) or a repair

- Turn the programme selector to Off. Pull out the mains plug.
 Turn off the tap and call customer services.

Customer Service

If you have any queries on use, are unable to rectify faults on the appliance yourself or if your appliance needs to be repaired, contact Customer Service.

You can solve many problems yourself by consulting the information on eliminating faults in this instruction manual or on our website. If this is not the case, contact our Customer Service

We will always find an appropriate solution and try to avoid unnecessary visits being made by a Customer Service technician.

With any warranty claims we will make sure that your appliance is repaired by trained Customer Service technicians using original spare parts, including after the manufacturer's warranty has expired.

For safety reasons repairs to the appliance should only be carried out by trained specialist staff. The warranty claim becomes void if repairs or interventions have been carried out by persons not authorised by us for that purpose or if our appliances have been fitted with spare, supplimentary or accessory parts that were not genuine parts and then resulted in a defect.

Function-relevant genuine spare parts according to the corresponding Ecodesign Order can be obtained from Customer Service for a period of at least 10 years from the date on which your appliance was placed on the market within the European Economic Area.

Note: Under the terms of the manufacturer's warranty the use of Customer Service is free of charge.

Detailed information on the warranty period and terms of warranty in your country is available from our Customer Service, your retailer or on our website. If you contact Customer Service, you will require the product number (E-Nr.) and the production number (FD) of your appliance.

The contact details for Customer Service can be found in the enclosed Customer Service directory or on our website.

Product number (E-Nr.) and production number (FD)

You can find the product number (E-Nr.) and the production number (fd) on the appliance's rating plate.

Depending on the model, the rating plate is located:

- On the inside of the door
- On the inside of the maintenance flap.
- On the rear of the appliance.

Make a note of your appliance's details and the Customer Service telephone number to find them again quickly.

More information about your model can be found online at

https://energylabel.bsh-group.com * This web address is linked to the official EU EPREL product database. At the time of printing its web address had not yet been published. Please then follow the instructions on searching for models. The model identifier is made up of the characters before the slash in the product number (E-Nr.) on the rating plate. Alternatively you can also find the model identifier in the first line of the EU energy label.

Trust the expertise of the

manufacturer. Contact us. By doing so, you can be sure that the repairs are carried out by trained service personnel using genuine spare parts.

* Only applies to countries in the European Economic Area.

Consumption values

The following information is provided in accordance with the EU-Ecodesign-Regulation. The values given for programs other than the Eco 40-60 are indicative only and were determined in accordance with the applicable standard EN60456 and EN62512.

The automatic dosing function has been deactivated for this purpose. Note on the comparison test: Deactivate the automatic dosing function unless this function is the object of the test.

Programme	rated ca- pacity	energy consumption [kWh/cycle] *	water consump- tion [l/cycle] *	Pro- gramme duration [h:min] *	maximum temperature [°C] * 5min	spin speed [rpm]*	remaining moisture [%] *
Eco 40-60 **	9,0	1,120	58,0	3:45	44	1400	53
Eco 40-60 **	4,5	0,660	44,0	2:50	37	1400	53
Eco 40-60 **	2,5	0,220	25,0	2:50	24	1400	53
Eco 40-60 + ☆ Drying Tar- get + ⊞ (Cup- boardDry)**	6,0	4,500	100,0	7:45	36	-	-0.1
Eco 40-60 + ☆ Drying Tar- get + ⊞ (Cup- boardDry)**	3,0	2,550	60,0	5:20	35	-	-0.1
Cottons 20 °C	9,0	0,350	89,0	3:02	24	1400	53
Cottons 40 °C	9,0	1,300	89,0	3:48	40	1400	53
Cottons 40 °C +	9,0	1,300	98,0	3:50	40	1400	53
Cottons 60 °C	9,0	1,700	89,0	3:03	53	1400	53
Easy Care 40 °C	4,0	0,830	66,0	2:29	44	1400	25
Mixed Load 40 °C	4,0	0,630	47,0	1:00	41	1400	50
Wool 🖉 30 °C	2,0	0,220	40,0	0:41	26	800	31

Observed values may deviate from the indicated values due to influence of water pressure, hardness and inlet temperature, ambient temperature, type, amount and soiling of laundry, detergent used, fluctuations in power supply and selected additional functions.

** Test program according to the EU-Ecodesign-Regulation and EU-Energy Label-Regulation with cold water (15°C).

Technical data

Dimensions:

84,8 cm x 59,8 cm x 59,0 cm (height x width x depth)

Weight:

80 kg

Mains connection:

Nominal voltage 220-240V, 50 Hz

Minimum installation protection (\bigoplus)10 A

Nominal power 1900-2300 W

Water pressure:

100-1000 kPa (1-10 bar)

Aqua-Stop warranty

Only for appliances with Aqua-Stop

In addition to warranty claims against the vendor based on the purchase agreement and to our appliance warranty, we will provide compensation under the following conditions:

- If water damage is caused due to a fault in our Aqua-Stop system, we will compensate domestic customers for the damage caused.
- 2. The liability guarantee is valid for the service life of the appliance.
- 3. It is a prerequisite of all warranty claims that the appliance with Aqua-Stop must have been installed and connected correctly in accordance with our instructions; this also includes a correctly fitted Aqua-Stop extension (genuine accessories). Our warranty does not cover defective feed lines or fittings leading to the Aqua-Stop connection at the tap.
- Appliances with Aqua-Stop do not need to be supervised during operation, nor secured afterwards by turning off the tap. The tap only needs to be turned off if you are away from home for a long period, e.g. for several weeks' holiday.



Thank you for buying a Bosch Home Appliance!

Register your new device on MyBosch now and profit directly from:

- Expert tips & tricks for your appliance
- Warranty extension options
- Discounts for accessories & spare-parts
- Digital manual and all appliance data at hand
- Easy access to Bosch Home Appliances Service

Free and easy registration – also on mobile phones:

www.bosch-home.com/welcome

BOSCH HOME APPLIANCES SERVICE

Looking for help? You'll find it here.

Expert advice for your Bosch home appliances, need help with problems or a repair from Bosch experts.

Find out everything about the many ways Bosch can support you:

www.bosch-home.com/service

Contact data of all countries are listed in the attached service directory.

Robert Bosch Hausgeräte GmbH Carl-Wery-Straße 34 81739 München, GERMANY www.bosch-home.com

9001515322 (0010)

Extract Hood User Manual

ENGLISH

HOOD USER GUIDE



Read this manual prior to performing any task!

IMPORTER

FRECAN S.L.U

CTRA. B-142 DE POLÍNYÀ A SENTMENAT, KM. 8,4 POLÍGONO INDUSTRIAL "CAN ROURE" SENTMENAT ES

1, en_US

Table of contents

1	INPUT 4				
2	Technical Drawing				
3	WARNING AND SAFETY PRECAUTIONS				
	3.1 LETHAL RISK, DANGER OF POISONING	8			
4	USAGE WITH AND WITHOUT CARBON FILTER	. 12			
5	CARBON FILTER REPLACEMENT	13			
	5.1 Carbon Filter Replacement	13			
	5.2 AF 500 Carbon Filter Replacement	. 13			
6	CLEANING AND PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE	. 15			
	6.1 ALUMINIUM FILTER CLEANING	. 15			
	6.2 Washing in Dishwasher	. 16			
	6.3 Hand Wash	. 16			
7	APPLIANCE POSITION	. 17			
	7.1 Installation and Unpacking of the Appliance	17			
	7.2 Recommendations for Energy Saving	. 18			
8	CONTENT OF PACKAGE	. 19			
9	OVERVIEW OF hood	. 20			
10	ASSEMBLY OF PRODUCT	21			
11	ASSEMBLY OF SHEET METAL FLUES	23			
12	USE OF PRODUCT	. 24			
	12.1 Using Push Button Product	. 24			
	12.2 How to use 5 Spd Dig Touch Control Product	. 24			
13	REPLACING THE LAMPS	. 25			
	13.1 Halogen Lamp Replacement	. 25			
14	AUTHORIZED SERVICE	26			
15	TECHNICAL TABLE	28			

1 INPUT

This guideline and the safety data includes all necessary information for a safe mounting as well as a safe use without defects.

- Please read all of this guideline and safety data before using the device.
- Keep the guideline in an appropriate place.
- If you pass the device onto others, make sure you also give this guideline and safety data.
- Disregarding this guideline may result in severe injuries and defects in the device.
- Please keep in mind that we won't be responsible for the defects arising from not taking this guideline into account.

The figures in this guideline aim to visually describe the actions. In these figures only one model of the device is illustrated. However, all instructions or figures also represent other models.





3 WARNING AND SAFETY PRECAU-TIONS

WARNING AND SAFETY PRECAU-TIONS

- This appliance can be used by children of 8 years and older, people with physical, sensory or mental capability deficiency or people with lack of experience or knowledge; as long as they are provided supervision or instructions for the safe use of the appliance and they comprehend the dangers.
- Children should not tamper with the appliance. Cleaning and user maintenance operations must not be performed by children unless supervised.
- This product is designed for home use.
- Usage voltage of your product is 220-240 Volt~50-60 Hz.
- Power cord of your product is fitted with a grounded plug. This cord must be plugged into a grounded outlet.
- The whole electrical wiring must be installed by a qualified electrician.
- Installation by unauthorized persons could lead to poor operation performance, damage to the product, and accidents.
- Feeder cable of the appliance mustn't be exposed to jamming or crashing during assembly. Feeder cable mustn't be placed near the cooker. In such cases, it might melt down and lead to fire.
- Do not plug in the appliance before the installation.

- Make sure that the installation place allows the user to easily unplug the power cable in case of any danger.
- Do not touch your product's lamps when they work for a long time. The lamps may burn your hand as they will be hot.
- Kitchen hoods are manufactured for household use in normal home cooking. There is a risk of malfunction in other types of use, and the product guarantee will be void.
- Comply with the rules and instructions regarding discharge of outgoing air, stipulated by the relevant authorities. (This warning does not apply to uses without flue.)
- Flammable foods must not be cooked under the appliance.
- Start your product after you place pot, pan etc. on the stoves. Otherwise, high temperature may cause same parts of your products to deform.
- Turn off the cooker's burner before taking the saucepan, pan, etc. off the cooker.
- Do not leave boiling oil on the stove. Pots that contain boiling oil may catch fire by itself.
- Since oils could catch fire when you cook fried foods in particular, be careful about your curtains and tablecloths.
- Ensure timely replacement of the filters. Filters not replaced in a timely manner pose risk of fire due to accumulated grease deposits on them.

- Do not use non-fire-resistant filtering materials instead of the filter.
- Do not operate your product without filter, and do not remove the filters when the product is in operation.
- In case of any fire, de-energize the hood and any other cooking devices. (Plug off the appliance or turn off the main switch.)
- If your product's periodic cleaning is not made in a timely manner, it could pose risk of fire.
- De-energize the appliance before any maintenance operations. (Plug off the appliance or turn off the main switch.)
- When electric cooker hood and devices fed with energies other than electricity operate simultaneously, the negative pressure in the room must not exceed 4 Pa (4 X 10 bar).
- Gas or fuel oil burning appliances, such as room heaters, which share the same environment with your product, must be fully insulated from the exhaust of this product or they must be hermetical.
- When you make a flue connection for your product, use pipes with a diameter of 150mm or 120 mm. The length of the duct connection as well as the number of elbows must be as minimum as possible.
- Children must not play with the appliance.
- For your safety, use "MAX 6 A" fuse in the hood system.
- Since the packing materials could be dangerous, keep them away from children.

- If the feeder cable is damaged, it must be replaced by its manufacturer or its authorized technical service or any other personnel qualified at the same level, in order to avoid any dangerous situation.
- In case of any deflagration, deenergize the cooker hood and cooking appliances, and cover the flame. Never use water to extinguish the fire.
- When cooking appliances are in operation, their accessible parts could be hot.
- This appliance is not intended to be used by people with physical, sensory and mental disabilities (including children) or those who have not adequate experience and knowledge regarding its use, unless they are under the supervision of a person responsible for the safety of the appliance.
- After the installation of the hood, the minimum distance must be 65 cm between the product and any electric cooker; and 75 cm between it and any gas ranges or cookers burning other fuels.
- Output of the hood must not be connected to air ducts, where there exist another smokes.
- You must be careful when using the appliance spontaneously with other appliances (e.g. gas, diesel fuels, coal, wood, etc. burning heaters, shower heaters), which use the same air in the same environment. Attention must be paid when using them simultaneously. It is because the hood could adversely affect the combustion, by discharging the ambient air.

WARNING AND SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Urban

LETHAL RISK, DANGER OF POISONING

- This warning does not apply to uses without flue.
- When electric cooker hood is used simultaneously with devices that use gas or other fuels, there must be sufficient ventilation in the room (might not apply to devices that discharges the air back into the room).

3.1 LETHAL RISK, DANGER OF POI-SONING

A DANGER

Warning - Choking Hazard The packaging materials are dangerous for children. Never allow children to play with packaging materials.

Warning - Death Hazard There are life-threatening danger and poisoning danger due to reabsorbed combustion gases. During the air discharge outlet use, unless sufficient air supply is provided, do not use the appliance simultaneously with devices that discharge toxic gases through flue such as ventilated, gas, oil, wood or coal burning heaters, shower heaters, water heaters, etc.Fig. 2



Fig. 2: Poisoning Danger

Ventilated goods (e.g. gas, oil, wood or coal burning heaters, shower heaters, water heaters) take combustion air from the installation location, and discharge the waste gas through a waste gas system (e.g. flue). When the cooker hood is active, it absorbs air from the kitchen and neighbouring rooms. If adequate air entry is not provided, vacuum emerges. In such a case, the toxic gases are absorbed from the flue and waste gas channel, and are taken into to door again. Fig. 2

 Therefore, adequate fresh air ingress must always be ensured.Fig. 3





WARNING AND SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

LETHAL RISK, DANGER OF POISONING

Fire danger!

- The oil residue in the oil filter may catch fire.Clean the oil filter at least once every 3 months.Never operate the device without the oil filter.
- The oil residue in the oil filter may catch fire. Never work with open flame (ex. flambe) near the device. The apparatus is allowed to be installed near a solid fuel (e.g. wood or coal) heater only if it has a nonremovable cover. No sparks should be scattered.
- Hot oils and fats catch fire easily. Hot oils and fats should never be left unattended. Never try to put out the fire with water. Turn off the cooker. Kill the flames carefully using a cover, fire blanket or a similar material.
- Gas operated cookers that do not have a cooking pot on create high heat during operation. A ventilation device placed over the cookers can be damaged or burned for this reason.
 Operate gas cookers only when there is a cooking pot on them.
- Operating multiple gas cookers simultaneously creates high heat. A ventilation device placed over the cookers can be damaged or burned for this reason. Never operate two gas cookers longer than 15 minutes on high flame setting. A large burner over 5kW (Wok) has the power of two gas burners.

A WARNING

Electrocution hazard!

- A malfunctioning device may cause electric shock. Never turn on a malfunctioning device. Pull the power plug and switch off the circuit breaker. Call customer service.
- Unsuitable repairs pose hazards. Repairs and replacement of damaged power cords must be performed only by a customer services technician trained by us. If the device is malfunctioning pull the power plug and switch off the circuit breaker. Call customer service.
- Water leaking into the device may cause electric shock. High pressure or steam cleaners must not be used.

A DANGER

Danger of physical injury!

- During the installation, there is a danger of physical injury due to the sharp edges. Use protective gloves throughout the installation process of the appliance.
- Due to risk of dropping the appliance, assembly of all safety bolts and covers must be performed as specified in the user manual.
- Objects placed on the appliance may fall over. Do not place any objects on the device.
- LED lights are very bright and may damage eyes (Risk group 1). You must not look directly at running LED lights for longer than 100 seconds.

WARNING AND SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

LETHAL RISK, DANGER OF POISONING

Urban

A WARNING

Risk of burn, risk of electric shock!

- Allow the appliance to cool before cleaning or maintenance process. Switch off the fuse or pull out the mains plug from the socket.
- There is risk of damage due to ingress of moisture in the electronics. Do not clean the control components with a wet cloth.
- The surface could be damaged due to a wrong cleaning process. Clean stainless steel surfaces only in their brushing direction. Do not use a stainless steel cleaner for the control elements.
- The surface could be damaged due to aggressive and abrasive cleaning agents. Never use aggressive and abrasive cleaning agents.

WARNING

Dangers of fire and physical injury! In case of repairing that is not performed according to the rules or as required, turn off the fuse or unplug the feeder cable of your appliance. Repairing must be performed only by the authorized technical service or authorized experts.

NOTICE

If the appliance is faulty or damages, turn off the fuse or unplug the feeder cable of your appliance and call the authorized service.

NOTICE

If the feeder cable is damaged, it must be replaced by its manufacturer or its authorized technical service or any other personnel qualified at the same level, in order to avoid any dangerous situation.

NOTICE

When the bulbs of the device malfunction, switch off the circuit breaker and unplug the device's power plug from the socket. Replace the defective bulbs immediately (leave bulbs to cool down first), in order to protect the remaining bulbs against overloading.

A CAUTION

Accessible components might be heated when used with cooking devices.

A DANGER

Air outlet pipe of this appliance mustn't be connected in the flue used to discharge the fume generated by devices that use gas or other fuels.

WARNING AND SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

LETHAL RISK, DANGER OF POISONING

Urban

Damage reasons

A CAUTION

Damage hazard due to corrosion. Always run the appliance to prevent condensate formation while cooking. Condensates may cause corrosion damage. Replace the malfunctioning lamp right away to prevent overloading of other lamps. Moisture intrusion in electronic parts poses a risk of damage. Never clean the control elements with a wet cloth. The surface could be damaged due to a wrong cleaning process. Clean stainless steel surfaces only in their brushing direction. Do not use a stainless steel cleaner for the control elements. The surface could be damaged due to aggressive and abrasive cleaning agents. Never use aggressive and abrasive cleaning agents. There is a risk of damage due to condensate liquid backflow. Install the air exit canal with a small downward inclination (1° inclination) from the appliance.
Urban

4 USAGE WITH AND WITHOUT CARBON FILTER

You can use this appliance in exhaust air mode and ventilated air mode.

Exhaust air mode

The absorbed air is cleaned by the grease filters, and is discharged through a piping system.Fig. 4



Fig. 4: Air Outlet without Carbon Filter

NOTICE

Exhaust air must not be transferred to an active smoke or waste gas flue; or a flue used for ventilation of the places, where heat sources are installed.

- If you want to transfer exhaust air to an inactive smoke or waste gas flue, you need to obtain permission from an authorized chimney sweep.
- If exhaust air is discharged through the external wall, a telescopic wall safe must be used.

Ventilated air mode

ĺ

Absorbed air is cleaned by the grease filters and an active carbon filter, and then it is transferred back to the kitchen.Fig. 5



Fig. 5: Air Circulation with Carbon Filter



You need to install an active carbon filter, in order to catch the substances, which cause stink in the circulating air. Consult your authorized dealer to know the different opportunities available for enabling the appliance to function in circulating air mode. You can buy the accessories required for this process from the relevant outlets, authorized technical service or online sales center. Urban

AF 500 Carbon Filter Replacement

5 CARBON FILTER REPLACEMENT

Under circumstances without a flue, an active carbon filter should be used to resend the inside air by re-filtering. An active carbon filter should be obtained from the service or your dealer. Disconnect the device prior to replacing the carbon filter. Since the carbon filter is used in kitchens without a flue outlet. it should be replaced with a new one every 3 to 5 months subject to usage. The carbon filter should never be washed. In any case the oil filters should be attached to the product regardless of using a carbon filter or not. Do not use the product without an oil filter

5.1 Carbon Filter Replacement

CARBON FILTER



Fig. 6: CARBON FILTER

The device you have bought is suitable for use with an carbon-filter.

- 1-Place the carbon filter in its housing.Fig. 6
- 2-Rotate the carbon filter clockwise and make sure that it is seated completely.Fig. 6



If not seated completely, the carbon filter can fall and damage your product.

Never wash the carbon filters. Keep carbon filters away from children.

5.2 AF 500 Carbon Filter Replacement

CARBON FILTER



Fig. 7: CARBON FILTER

CARBON FILTER REPLACEMENT

AF 500 Carbon Filter Replacement

Urban

- Active carbon filter is not included in the delivery.
- You can obtain active carbon filter from authorized sellers.

The appliance you have purchased is appropriate for use with carbon filters.

- 1-Place the lower part of the carbon filter to the motor cabinet.Fig. 7
- 2-Press on the tab of the carbon filter and push it forward, and ensure that the tabs of carbon filter are engaged and locked.Fig. 7



If carbon filter does not fit in completely, it might drop and damage your product.

A DANGER

Never wash carbon filters unless you are sure that they are washable. Consult your seller. Keep carbon filters away from children.

6 CLEANING AND PREVENTIVE MAIN-TENANCE

Ucboo

Cleaning and user maintenance of the appliance shall not be performed by unattended children.

- The surface could be damaged due to aggressive and abrasive cleaning agents. Never use aggressive and abrasive cleaning agents. Supply your cleaning and protective substances that are appropriate for your appliance from the authorized technical service. Surface of appliance and control units are sensitive to scratching.
- Clean the surfaces with a soft and damp cloth, dish-washing liquid or mild glass cleaning agent. Soften the dry, sticky dirt with a damp cloth. Do not scrape!
- It is not appropriate to use dry cloths, sponges that may scratch, materials that require rubbing, and other aggressive cleaning agents containing sand, soda, acid or chlorine.
- Clean the stainless steel surfaces in their brushing direction only.
- Do not use stainless steel cleaning agents and wet clothes for control units. Cleaning of metal grease filters Used metal grease filters retain the greasy particles in the moisture and vapour generated in the kitchen. Clean the metal grease filters about every three months, under normal use conditions (1 to 2 hours a day).

- Do not use excessively effective, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents.
- For cleaning the metal grease filters, clean the holder parts of the metal grease filters in the appliance, with a damp cloth as well.
- You can clean the metal grease filters in the dishwasher or by hand.
- Do not apply spray cleaning supplies directly to the product.
- Do not keep flammable and/or heavy decorative items on the product.

6.1 ALUMINIUM FILTER CLEANING



Fig. 8

1 Aluminium Filter Tab



Clean the aluminium oil filters periodically every 3 months. Hand Wash

- Press the aluminium filter tab (1) and pull the aluminium filter to the direction of the arrow (Fig. 8).
- As you remove the aluminium filter, hold it with your other hand to prevent it from dropping.
- As you remove the aluminium filter, in order to prevent the accumulated oil to drip, keep the filter surface parallel to the floor.

6.2 Washing in Dishwasher

In case of washing in dishwasher, a slight change might occur in colour. This has no effect on the function of the metal grease filter.

- Do not clean too dirty metal grease filters together with utensils in the dishwasher.
- Place the metal grease filters loosely and freely in the dishwasher. Metal grease filters must be placed in the dishwasher without jamming.

6.3 Hand Wash

- Soften the metal grease filters in a hot water with dish-washing liquid.
- Use a brush for cleaning and wait for the liquid in metal grease filters to flow off completely.
- Rinse the filters thoroughly after cleaning.

For stubborn dirts, you can use a special grease solvent. You can buy such an agent from the authorized sales centre.

APPLIANCE POSITION

Installation and Unpacking of the Appliance

Urban

7 APPLIANCE POSITION



Fig. 9

After completing the installation of hood, the minimum distance must be 65 cm between the product and any electric cooker; and 75 cm between it and any gas ranges or cookers burning other fuels (Fig. 9).

7.1 Installation and Unpacking of the Appliance

- Any faults encountered shall be reported to the dealer, too.
- Do not allow children to play the with packaging materials!
- Check that your appliance is not deformed.
- Report the transport issues immediately to transport operator.

APPLIANCE POSITION

Recommendations for Energy Saving

Urban

7.2 Recommendations for Energy Saving

- Replace the carbon filters on a regular basis.
- Regularly clean your aluminium filters. Since dirty filters would block the air passage, you might have to use the appliance at a higher speed.
- Use your product according to its normal speeds.
- Use at higher speed would cause an increase in the energy consumption.

Urbon

CONTENT OF PACKAGE 8





6)

(12)



(14)



Fig. 10: CONTENT OF PACKAGE

- 1-Product
- 2-Inner Flue
- 3-**Outer Flue**
- Ø150/120mm Plastic Flue Adapter 4-(Option)
- 5- Remote Control (Optional)
- 7- User Manual
- Assembly Pattern 8-

9-**Product Hanging Plate**

(13)

- 10- Ø6mm Plastic Dowel
- 11- Ø 10 mm Plastic wall plug
- 12- 5.5x60 Wall Mount Screw
- 13- M5x35 Product Mount Screw
- 14- 3.9x22 Flue Connection Plate Screw
- 15- 3.5x9.5 Flue Connection Screw

(15)

9 OVERVIEW OF hood



Fig. 11: DESCRIPTION OF THE APPLIANCE

- 1- Inner Flue
- 2- Outer Flue
- 3- Front Panel
- 4- Aluminium Filter
- 5- Cooker Lighting
- 6- Control Panel

Urban

10 ASSEMBLY OF PRODUCT



Fig. 12

- 1- Inner Flue
- 2- Outer Flue
- 3- Product Hanging Plate
- 4- Product Hanging Plate Fixing Screw
- 5- Glass

- 6- 2x 3.9x22 Screw
- 7- Flue Connection Plate
- 8- 2x Ø6mm Plastic Dowel
- 9- 3x 5.5 x 60 Wall Mount Screw
- 10- 3x Ø 10 mm Plastic wall plug



- 1. Assemble the cooker hood with the help of the assembly scheme.
- 2. Affix the assembly pattern on the wall at the specified height (See the minimum and maximum distances intended for the worktop, in the assembly pattern) and drill holes A, B and C with the dimensions specified in the template (Fig. 12).
- Insert Ø 10mm wall plugs into the holes drilled as A, B, C, D, and screw down the 5.5 x 60 screws (9) at the points A + B, in such a way as to remain 5mm space between the screw head and the wall (Fig. 12).
- **4.** Affix the hanging plates of the cooker hood on the body of the cooker hood with M5x35 bolt (3) (Fig. 12).
- 5. Hang the hood from its hanging plates on the wall at points (A, B). If the hood is not parallel, position its shape to parallel by tightening or loosening M5x35 screw (3).
- **6.** Tighten A + B fixing screws on the wall, and completely secure the product at point C.
- 7. Nake the air outlet connection of the product

Urban

11 ASSEMBLY OF SHEET METAL FLUES



Fig. 13

- 1- Inner Flue
- 2- Flue Connection Plate Fixing Screws
- 3- Flue Connection Plate

The outer and inner sheet metal flues are assembled one within the other.

The cooker hood is set in the midst, and then the flue connecting plate (3) is directly affixed to the wall, under the cover or mark the points E and F. ()

Drill points E and F with Ø6mm drill bit, and insert Ø6mm and plastic dowels. Insert the flue connection plate with 3,9X22 screws ().

Affix the inner flue to the flue connection plate by pulling it upwards (Fig. 13/2).

How to use 5 Spd Dig Touch Control Product

12 USE OF PRODUCT

12.1 Using Push Button Product

O	\bigcirc			0	
1	2	3	4	5	

Fig. 14: push button

- 1. Press this button to reset your product.
- 2. Product will run on 1st speed level when this button is pressed.
- Product will run on 2nd speed level when this button is pressed.
- Product will run on 3rd speed level when this button is pressed.
- **5.** Press this button to turn on and off the lamp.

12.2 How to use 5 Spd Dig Touch Control Product

×	\top	Ì	+	Φ	岺
1	2	3	4	5	6

Fig. 15: 5 Spd Dig Button

1. Press this button to turn on the product.Fig. 15

Uchoc

- 2. Press this button to decrease the motor speed.Fig. 15
- 3. Dig display You can follow which speed the product is currently working on this display.Fig. 15
- Press this button to increase the motor speed.Fig. 15
- 5. When timer button is pressed, a 15-minute timer function will be activated; display will give a signal once the timer starts and the motor will stop automatically after 15 minutes.Fig. 15
- **6.** Press this button to turn on and off the lamp.Fig. 15

Cleaning Periods for Metal Filters

Filters should be cleaned when "C" signal appears on the Display or (due to usage) every 2 or 3 weeks. To delete "C" signal after the filters are cleaned and replaced, press and hold (X) button more than 3 secs (when device is off). Letter "E" will appear on the Display and it will switch to normal operation. If operation before deleting the "C" signal is required, active motor speed will appear for 1 sec when you press (X) button and then the motor will resume running.

REPLACING THE LAMPS

13 REPLACING THE LAMPS

13.1 Halogen Lamp Replacement

Ucbon

Disconnect the electrical supply of the hood. Leave the lamps to cool down first because they could burn your hands when they are hot.

-), max 50 W

It indicates the maximum power consumption of the lamp. A lamp with same power rating should be used when replacing the lamp.



To find out the power rating used in the product, see the declaration label in the product.

Fig. 16: Halogen lamp symbol

Only self-protection tungsten halogen lamp or self-protection metal halide lamp must be used.



Fig. 17: Halogen Lamp Replacement

For replacing the halogen lamps, push downwards on the lamp holder from its behind, turn it a little bit counter-clockwise, and take it out downwards.Fig. 17

14 AUTHORIZED SERVICE

If Lighting is Not Functioning:

- Make sure that the plug is plugged in, and that the fuses are intact.
- Check the bulbs. Make sure you unplugged the device before performing this check. Tighten the bulbs if they are loose; you can replace the bulbs if they still don't work.

Possible Faults and Things that You can do Before Calling Technical Service:

A) If the device does not run in any way:

- Check to see if the hood is plugged in or if the plug is fit properly into the socket.
- Check the fuse, to which the appliance is connected, as well as the main fuse of your house.

If the device performance is not enough and it creates high noise while running:

- Is the outlet diameter of the appliance's flue adequate? (min.120 mm).
- Are the metal filters clean? Please check.
- If you use the hood without flue, make sure that the carbon filters are not older than 6 months.
- Be attentive to ventilate your kitchen adequately, in order to provide an airflow. If you are still not satisfied with the performance of the appliance, consult the authorized technical service.



Troubleshooting

Fault description	Cause	Remedy		
Product Does Not Work	Check the power connection.	Mains voltage must be 220-240 V, and product must be plugged into a grounded socket.		
Illumination lamp does not operate	Check the power connection.	Mains voltage must be 220-240 V, and product must be plugged into a grounded socket.		
Illumination lamp does not operate	Check the lamp switch.	Lamp switch must be at "on" posi- tion.		
Illumination lamp does not operate	Check the bulbs.	Bulbs must be operative.		
Product's Air Intake is Weak	Check The Alu- minium Filter.	The aluminium cartridge filter should be washed once a month under normal conditions.		
Product's Air Intake is Weak	Check The Air Outlet Flue.	Air Outlet Flue Must Be Open.		
Product's Air Intake is Weak	Check The Carbon Filter.	In products that work with carbon filters, carbon filter must be replaced once in every 3 months under normal conditions.		
It Does Not Discharge Air (in flueless use)	Check The Alu- minium Filter.	The aluminium cartridge filter should be washed once a month under normal conditions.		
It Does Not Discharge Air (in flueless use)	Check The Carbon Filter.	In products that work with carbon filters, carbon filter must be replaced once in every 3 months under normal conditions.		

Urban

15 TECHNICAL TABLE

Supply Voltage	220 - 240 V 50Hz
Insulation Class of Motor	F
Insulation Class	CLASSI



This product complies with the 2014/30/EC (Regulation on Electromagnetic Compliance) and 2014/35/EC (Regulation on Low Voltage Devices (LVD)) Directives.



This device complies with the Directive on the Control of Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment.

Specifications of the device and this manual may be modified without prior notification.

Vectaire MVHR User Manual

- WHHR-Maxi & Maxi Plus BY
- Maxi & Maxi Plus BY+LCD (with integral LCD screen)



 Maxi & Maxi Plus BY-AT (with acoustic attenuation and integral LCD screen)
 Residential Whole House Heat Recovery Units
 Summer Bypass & Frost Protection
 Low Energy EC Motor
 Optional Humidistat
 INSTALLATION, OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

"WHHR MAXI & MAXI PLUS" - WHOLE HOUSE HEAT RECOVERY UNIT INSTALLATION AND OPERATING & MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

Safety Notice

It is important to read this Instruction Manual carefully before installing or using the product. Following these instructions will ensure that your ventilation system is installed, commissioned and used properly and continues to operate effectively. Vectaire will not be held responsible and will not accept liability for any damage caused to persons or property through failure to follow the guidance provided in this manual. It should always be available with the product for easy reference.

WHHR - Maxi: 6"/150mm spigot, for dwellings up to 250m², max capacity 177 litre/sec

Maxi Plus: 6"/150mm spigot, for dwellings up to 400m², max capacity 238 litre/sec

General Information

The Vectaire WHHR Maxi/Maxi Plus heat recovery systems provide whole house mechanical ventilation to living areas, bedrooms, kitchen and bathrooms. They extract stale, contaminated air from kitchens, utility rooms and bathrooms, and use the heat recovered from this air to warm fresh, incoming air to create a flow of fresh, filtered air throughout the dwelling. The extract and intake air streams are separated to avoid contamination.

The system will operate continuously to create a stable, comfortable, healthy environment avoiding the use of excessive energy and saving heat already generated.

The heat recovery unit must be installed vertically, and will generally be sited in a cupboard. It will be connected by hidden ductwork to vents sited in the ceilings of the rooms which are to be ventilated. Each unit is commissioned individually so that the amount of air moved is tailored to suit the performance required. There will be a facility to boost the



The system is designed to run continuously and should NOT be switched off except for maintenance or filter replacement. It is important to follow the advice in this user manual and correctly install and maintain the system to ensure a healthy and comfortable indoor environment.

Features

- **SAP PCDB Listed** whole house heat recovery units giving continuous ventilation in the kitchen and up to seven additional wet rooms (using rigid ducting)
- low noise levels
- variable choice low (trickle) speed and boost options for optimum setting at installation
- boost speed triggered by a switched live connection from:
 - a light switch (if more than one light switch is used, each one must be a double pole switch)
 - DRH240 (dynamic remote humidistat)
 - PIRFF (passive infra red)
 - THM (thermostat)
 - a remote switch/pull cord
 - or via LCD control panel
- Can be mounted with left or right hand drainage and ducting
- Economical EC motor with electronic control plus:
- Standard control features:
 - > variable adjustment trickle and boost speeds set at installation for both motors independently
 - > boost setting with integral overrun timer adjustable up to 20 minutes
 - > optional delay-on-timer boost speed does not operate if switched off within 2 minutes
 - > integral frost-stat proportionately reduces intake motor speed as temperature falls
 - > purge boost for rapid air change
 - > BMS connections for remote motor shut off
- Installation MUST be carried out by suitably qualified personnel and MUST be in accordance with current IEE regulations









Installation

IT IS IMPORTANT THESE INSTRUCTIONS ARE READ FULLY BEFORE INSTALLATION

- This product should not be used for any purpose other than that for which it was designed and as shown in this leaflet
- All packaging should be removed and the unit checked for damage in transit. If there is any damage, please contact your supplier
- The WHHR Maxi/Maxi Plus must be installed vertically, and generally be fitted into a cupboard, loft or ceiling void.
- In order to comply with Construction (Design & Management) Regulations, sufficient access for safe maintenance (recommended on an annual basis), or removal following installation, MUST be provided for this product. We recommend that a clearance of at least 200mm is available on each side of the cabinet to allow access to the motors. See dimensions diagram.
- Regulations and current Building Regulations. In order to comply with these, it may be necessary to fit fire dampers or other similar devices within the associated ductwork.
- Flue gases from fuel-burning equipment must not be drawn into a living area. If any room from which air is extracted contains a fuel burning appliance, such as a central heating boiler, then its flue must be of the sealed or balanced flue type, or allowance must be made for an adequate supply of air into the room.
- The unit must **NOT** be installed:
 - where there is excessive oil or grease
 - where there are hazardous gasses, liquids or vapours that are flammable or corrosive
 - in ambient temperatures above 40°C or lower than 0°C
 - in areas of excessive humidity or in a wet environment
- Where possible the unit should **NO**T be installed directly above a bedroom or living room.
- The condensation drain **MUST** be fitted
- Care should be taken to ensure that ducting is free from blockages
- External grilles should be located a minimum of 600mm from any flue outlet in accordance with all Regulations
- The unit must be connected to a 230-240v, 50Hz single phase electrical supply.
- A triple pole isolation switch with contact separation of at least 3mm must be used to connect the appliance to the fixed wiring when using the Switched Live.
- The product should only be connected to the mains electricity supply or electrical outlet if:
 - your electrical voltage and frequency correspond to those shown on the rating label.
 - the capacity of your electricity supply is sufficiently powerful to operate the product at its maximum power.
- If one of the spigots is not connected to ducting a safety grille **MUST** be fitted to that spigot, so that it is impossible for any moving part to be touched.

Installation of the appliance **MUST** be carried out by a qualified and suitably competent person and should be carried out in clean, dry conditions where dust and humidity are at minimal levels. The unit is not suitable for installation to the exterior of the dwelling.

Transportation, packaging and storage prior to installation

- Care should be taken when transporting the unit. Please be aware that this unit weighs 37 Kg (Maxi) or 42 kgs (Maxi Plus) we recommend the use of appropriate handling and lifting equipment. Dropping or knocking will damage the inner workings of the unit.
- The unit should always be stored in a clean, dry environment.
- Remove all packaging before installation.

Pre-inspection

Page 4

- Inspect the unit and electrical supply cord for any damage (damage must be repaired by a suitably qualified and competent person.)
- Check all parts are supplied as shown.

Parts list

- 1 x Vectaire WHHR Maxi or Maxi-Plus unit.
- 2 x Wall mounting brackets.
- 1 x Installation, Operation & Maintenance Instructions

Any parts shortages or faults must be reported to the supplier immediately.

Installation - mounting - Duct and Duct Connections (refer to design drawing)

• 4 x 150mm nominal diameter spigots are provided for the connection of ducting. These are clearly marked for correct connection of the supply and exhaust ducts.

NB. ductwork installer should mark the "as installed" tick box on the label on the top of the unit to show whether it is left or right handed.





 Drill the holes and fit wall plugs. (Note: if the unit is not being mounted on a solid wall, ensure that appropriate fixings are used.)



4. Mark a horizontal line on the wall 315mm below the hole centres for the upper bracket. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for the lower bracket.





 Mark a horizontal line on the wall using a spirit level. This line will be approximately 60mm below the location of the top face of the unit when fitted (excluding duct ports). Use the mounting bracket as a template to mark the fixing hole centres.



3. Fix the upper mounting bracket to the wall ensuring the interlocking side is at the top, as shown



5. Mount the unit by locating the brackets on the back of the unit securely over the wall brackets.









6. Condensation

- (The unit may sometimes produce condensation which must be drained away. A 21.5/22mm dia pipe outlet is provided on this unit).
 Note: optional left or right hand drain connectors (21.5/22mm) are fitted. A drainage pipe must be connected to the appropriate side, dependent on the positions of the supply and extract ducting. Refer to figs A and B.
- If the ducting is installed as shown in Fig A, the drain must be connected to the left-hand outlet. If the ducting is installed as shown in Fig. B, the drain must be connected to the right-hand outlet. The unused drain outlet must be capped off.

• The drainage pipe must be installed with a continuous fall from the cabinet

- to the external household drainage point and a wet or dry trap must be fitted to prevent return air penetration.
 If any part of the condensate drain pipe passes through an unheated space, it must be insulated with the equivalent of at least 25mm of insulating material with a thermal conductivity of 0.04 W/mK.
- Where ducting is installed in an unheated space, all of the ducts should be insulated.
 Where ducting is installed in a heated space, only the cold ducts should be insulated. i.e. the supply duct from outside and the extract duct from the unit to the outside.
- The duct layout must be designed to suit the requirements of the ventilation/heat recovery system and building layout.
- Where rigid duct is used, it should be installed using the least number of fittings to minimise air flow resistance. Where possible, final connection to the grilles and unit should be made with a flexible connection.
- Where flexible ducts are used, ensure that:
 - lengths of ducting are no longer than 300mm in any one place
 - the duct is stretched so that it is smooth and straight
 - where bends are necessary, they have large radii (ie avoid sharp bends)
 - the duct is not crushed if in a restricted area



Condensate pipe MUST always be connected to ATMOSPHERE side of unit

Where ducting passes through a fire partition, suitable fire dampers **must** be installed to prevent the transmission of fire through the duct.

Electrical Connection

WARNING: these appliances must be earthed and all wiring must conform to current IEE Regulations and all applicable standards and Building Regulations.

- The unit is suitable for 230V, 50Hz Single phase supply.
- The unit is supplied with:
 - The unit is supplied with:
 - A mains rated 4 core flexible cord (black, brown, grey, green/yellow)

An optional factory-fitted 2 cord volt-free flexible cord for purge switching

Cables for any other external device will be provided and labelled on request

- A triple pole isolation switch with contact separation of at least 3mm must be used to connect the appliance to the fixed wiring when using the Switched Live.
- Boost controls must not be located within 1 metre of a cooker or where they may be affected by excessive heat or moisture.
- Boost and other external controls should be clearly identified and conveniently located.
- The boost facility can be activated by a switched live connection (in addition to the permanent supply live). The switched live can be operated by a variety of external devices, including:
 - PIRFF (passive infra red)*
 - DRH240 (dynamic remote humidistat)*
 - THM (thermostat)*
 - a light switch (if more than one light switch is used, each one must be a double pole switch)
 - a remote switch/pull cord

or via LCD control

(*PIRFF, DRH240 and THM may have integral over-run timer which controls the length of time that the fan will continue to operate at its boost speed after the boost has been switched off.)





Commissioning

- 1. The commissioning must only be carried out by a suitably qualified person.
- Prior to starting the commissioning procedure, ensure that the ductwork connections and airflow directions match one of the options A or B, shown on page 5.
 Check that the drain connection is on the correct side.
- 3. Before making any adjustments, ensure that the air valves or grilles are fully open.
- 4. Please see separate "LCD Control Panel Commissioning Instructions" for details on commissioning and user operations.

WARNING : With the control board panel removed, 230 volt live connections are accessible.

Cleaning and Maintenance

WARNING: The unit uses a 230V supply and contains rotating mechanical parts.

Before carrying out any maintenance or cleaning operations the mains electrical supply MUST be disconnected.

The heat exchanger within the unit should be cleaned annually.

To clean the filters and heat exchanger:

The air filters and heat exchanger of the Vectaire WHHR Maxi/Maxi Plus should be cleaned regularly by a suitably qualified person (the frequency of cleaning will vary depending on the installation environment).

Filters:

- Slide out the filters by pulling out the tabs.
- Clean the filters carefully using a vacuum cleaner, replace in the slots and refit the filter covers

Heat Exchanger:

- Firstly remove filters as described above
- Remove the screws securing the front panel and carefully lift off. Using the plastic strap fitted, carefully pull out the heat exchanger
- Caution: if this is done during cold weather, the heat exchanger may contain water. It is advisable to have a plastic bowl available to avoid spillage.
- Lightly clean the faces of the heat exchanger with a vacuum cleaner. Replace the heat exchanger carefully, by sliding the assembly back into the cabinet.
- Replace the front cover by hooking the top edge into the slots in the cabinet and secure in place using the screws.
- Finally, replace the filters as above.

Never use water or any other fluids to clean the heat exchanger

Filter Replacement

Filters should be replaced annually or after a maximum of 3 cleaning cycles.

Replacement filters are available from Vectaire - call us on +44(0)1494 522333 or email to sales@vectaire.co.uk

Mitsubishi MVHR



LOSSNAY HEAT RECOVERY VENTILATOR (RESIDENTIAL USE) MODEL

VL-250CZPVU-R-E, VL-250CZPVU-L-E VL-350CZPVU-R-E, VL-350CZPVU-L-E VL-500CZPVU-R-E, VL-500CZPVU-L-E

Instruction Manual



* The figure shows VL-350CZPVU-R-E

For user

Contents

1. Safety Precautions	2
2. Features	4
3. Preparations Before Use	5
4. Names and Functions of Parts	6
5. How to Use	7
6. Maintenance	17
7. Troubleshooting	19
8. Specifications	21
9. After-Sales Service	21

Do not attempt to install the product by yourself. (Safety and proper functions of the product may not be assured.)

- This product is for residential use.
- To ensure correct and safe use, read the instruction manual thoroughly. Before using the product, check Safety Precautions to use it correctly and safely.
- After reading, store the manual in a handy location for easy access.

1. Safety Precautions

The following symbols denote the type and degree of danger resulting from incorrect handling.



Symbols used in the text and on the main unit have the

following meanings.

	Do not use the product at locations where toxic gas or gas containing corrosive components such as acids, alkaline, organic solvents, or paints is generated. Failure to heed this warning may result in malfunction.
	During cleaning and maintenance, do not climb on an unstable stand. Injury may result if you tumble down.
Pronibited	Do not use aerosol sprays (such as insect sprays, hair sprays or cleaners) on such as the unit.
	Failure to heed this warning may result in deterioration and damage to the parts.
	Make sure that the product is installed horizontally. Water leakage may result in damage to property or household effects, and injury may result if the product should fall.
	Make sure that drain piping is installed at the discharge outlet.
	Wear gloves during cleaning and maintenance. Failure to heed this warning may result in injury.
0	When removing the outdoor air filter case and exhaust filter case, dew condensation water that has built up indoor sometimes drips. So, remove the filter cases gently by supporting them with both hands so that they are not tilted.
Follow instructions	Securely install the parts after cleaning and maintenance. Injury may result if the parts should fall.
	This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance. (This appliance can be used by children aged from 8 years and above and persons with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities or lack of experience and knowledge if they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance in a safe way and understand the hazards involved. Children shall not play with the appliance. Cleaning and

Requests on Use

- When this product ventilates, it takes in cold air from the outdoor in winter. For this reason, when the outdoor air temperature drops, moisture in the air around the product condensates, and water drops sometimes adhere to the product or drop. This, however, is not a malfunction. Wipe off any water droplets.
- When outdoor air temperatures are low and operation of the product is stopped, operation of the ventilator or pressure of the outdoor wind might cause outdoor air to flow in from the product, which may result in dew condensation forming on the product and other parts. This is not a malfunction. Wipe off any water droplets.
- When a lot of humidity is generated from building materials at newly built houses, dew condensation may occur on the product and other parts. This is not a malfunction. Wipe off any water droplets.
- When a strongly fragrant scent, etc. is used in toilets, bath rooms and wash basins, or when cigarette or other smoke is discharged, odor is sometimes sense from the air vent.
- When ventilating a bathroom and living room etc. , operate the product for 24 hours.
- Do not stop operation except in the following instances. (Resume operation after the product has been temporarily stopped.)
- When there is heavy snow, strong winds or heavy rain such as snowstorms or typhoons
- When there is thick fog
- During cleaning and maintenance
- When a lot of humidity is generated from building materials at newly built houses, dew condensation may form on the product and other parts. So, switch the operation mode to temporarily stop operation, and open the windows.

2. Features

What is the LOSSNAY HEAT RECOVERY VENTILATOR ...?

- Effective ventilation routes can be achieved in the entire house by the supply air vent and the exhaust vent being installed at locations away from each other depending on the duct connection method.
- Built-in filters reduce the influx of dust, pollen, etc, in outdoor air before the air is supplied to rooms.

Heat exchange operation

Dirty air from the room is discharged (=exhaust), and clean air from the outdoor is taken into the room (=air supply). During this time, air is discharged and taken in through the Heat exchanger. As a result, air is ventilated while reusing (heat collection) the warmth or coolness of the room which is discarded during ventilation.

When air conditioning is used in summer and winter, heat exchange ventilation reduces the load placed on air conditioning to ensure energy savings.

Bypass operation

When exhaust and air supply are performed, air is supplied to the room without any change in the outdoor air temperature due to exhaust being performed without passing through the Heat exchanger.

• In spring and fall, and summer nights, for example, the cool air of the outdoor is taken in.



* The figure shows VL-350CZPVU-L-E

Note

- Ventilation is conducted at the ventilation air volume (Base Notch) required for the residence.
- By setting to Boost/Purge, the ventilation air volume is increased temporary to quickly ventilate the air.
- In the long absence, use the Holiday mode to save energy by reducing the fan output.

3. Preparations Before Use

Receive an explanation about operation procedures and the correct method of use to ensure safe operation.

Make sure that commissioning and operation checks described in the Installation Manual have been carried out.

• Check the positions and operation methods.

1) Inspection space:

It is required for maintenance on the product.

The product requires maintenance (regular filter cleaning, internal motor replacement, etc.).

If the product position is out of the specified dimensions as a result of checking the inspection layout drawing described in the Installation Manual section *3.2 Working space*, contact a distributor or an electrician.

2) Grills:

They are required on the supply air and exhaust sides of the product.

To reduce the frequency of cleaning the filters on the product, we recommend using a filter for taking up dust in the room in the exhaust grill.

3) Controller:

It is required for starting and stopping operation of the product and for switching the fan speed. Please see section *5. How to use*.

Note

- The product is not an air-conditioner.
- We recommend local ventilation for discharge cigarette smoke, etc.
- We recommend installing beds away from the supply air vent. (During sleep, you may be bothered by the operating sound of the product or feel cold air.)

4. Names and Functions of Parts



* The figure shows VL-350CZPVU-R-E

- On L-type (for example, VL-350CZPVU-L-E), filters, controller and name plate are on the reflected positions.

No.	Name	Function
1	Exhaust air filter	It prevents heat exchanger from clogging.
2	Exhaust air filter case	It holds the exhaust air filter
3	Optional air filter case	For optional filter*
4	Filter cover	-
5	Drain pipe attachment	It is connected to drain pipe.
6	Control box	It holds circuit board
7	Name plate	It shows product name and serial No.
8	Outdoor air filter	It removes insects, pollen, dirt, dust, and other particles from the outdoor air that is taken into the room.
9	Outdoor air filter case	It holds the outdoor air filter.
10	Heat exchanger	It exchanges heat between the supply air and the return air.
11	Controller	Product operation, See section 5.

* Optional filter

Filter name	MODEL	Applicable model	Loca	tion to use
	P-250F-E	VL-250CZPVU-R-E/VL-250CZPVU-L-E		L Type
Replacement filter	P-350F-E	VL-350CZPVU-R-E/VL-350CZPVU-L-E	RA, OA	
	P-500F-E	VL-500CZPVU-R-E/VL-500CZPVU-L-E		
	P-250SF-E	VL-250CZPVU-R-E/VL-250CZPVU-L-E		
Standard filter	P-350SF-E	VL-350CZPVU-R-E/VL-350CZPVU-L-E	RA, OA, SA	
	P-500SF-E	VL-500CZPVU-R-E/VL-500CZPVU-L-E		R Type
	P-250MF-E	VL-250CZPVU-R-E/VL-250CZPVU-L-E		
Medium efficiency filter	P-350MF-E	VL-350CZPVU-R-E/VL-350CZPVU-L-E	RA, OA, SA	
	P-500MF-E	VL-500CZPVU-R-E/VL-500CZPVU-L-E		
	P-250PF-E	VL-250CZPVU-R-E/VL-250CZPVU-L-E		
PM2.5 filter	P-350PF-E	VL-350CZPVU-R-E/VL-350CZPVU-L-E	RA, OA, SA	
	P-500PF-E	VL-500CZPVU-R-E/VL-500CZPVU-L-E		RA: Return Air
	P-250NF-E	VL-250CZPVU-R-E/VL-250CZPVU-L-E		OA: Outdoor Air
NOx filter	P-350NF-E	VL-350CZPVU-R-E/VL-350CZPVU-L-E	SA	
	P-500NF-E	VL-500CZPVU-R-E/VL-500CZPVU-L-E		

* When a NOx filter and an optional dust catch filter (P-250/350/500SF-E, P-250/350/500MF-E, P-250/350/500PF-E) are used together, make sure to install a NOx filter on the SA side and a dust catch filter on the OA side.

* Install any of the filters other than NOx filter on the OA and RA side to protect the product.

5. How to Use

■Names and functions of controller components

Controller interface



- ON/OFF button Off operation is disabled at the factory default setting.
- ② SELECT button
- ③ RETURN button
- ④ MENU button

The «Main menu» screen is displayed.



5 Backlit LCD

The screen displays operation settings. Press any button to turn on the backlight. You will be able to operate buttons. After turning on the backlight for a certain period of time, the backlight turns off.

6 ON/OFF lamp

This lamp lights up in green while the product is operated. It blinks in green, while the product has an error.

7 Function buttons (F1, F2, F3, F4)

Use to select each settings on each screen. The functions of the buttons change depending on the screen. See the function button guide at the bottom of the screen.

	Main Main menu
	► User options Commissioning
	Maintenance
The function button guide	Cursor
	F1 F2 F3 F4

If any function is not in the function button, the function button guide is not displayed.

Display

* All icons are displayed for explanation.



1 Controller name

Lossnay is always displayed.

2 Clock

Current time and appear weekday here.

3 Fan speed

Fan speed setting appears here.

4 Ventilation mode

Ventilation mode setting appears here.

5 Function button guide

Functions of the corresponding buttons appear here.

6

Appears when the filter maintenance time comes.

7 %

Appears when the Boost/Purge preset, or the Manual bypass mode function is enabled.

8 9

Appears when the Holiday mode is enabled.

9 😾

Appears when performing to protect the Heat exchanger. (Adjusting air volumes or operating Preheater)

10 🕑

Appears when the Silent mode is enabled.

11 0

This is displayed while linking with the air conditioner.

12 🕉

This is displayed when the Fan speed is fixed by the external input.

13 Outdoor, Return, Supply temperature

The outdoor air temperature, return air (= extract) temperature, and supply air temperature are displayed. (The outdoor air temperature and the return air temperature are measured by the product built-in sensor.

Since this product is not a measuring instrument, there is a possibility that an difference may occur with the local thermometer. The supply air temperature shows the calculated values.) It is not displayed in the factory default settings.
If you want to change the settings, please see 6.4.2.4 Display details of Installation Manual.

Basic operations



- OFF operation is disabled in the factory default settings. Therefore, if you turn on the power for the first time, you cannot turn it off with this button.
- If you want to enable the OFF operation, see the Installation Manual section 6.4.2.7.



Note

Base notch: The [Base notch] is the fan speed of standard for constant ventilation.

The base notch is set to fan speed 1 S. at the factory default settings.

During [Boost] and [Purge], 🔹 is shown. After a certain period of time, the fan speed will return to the [Base notch].

To change the [Base notch] setting, please see Installation Manual section 6.5.1.

Ventilation mode



lcon	Function
Auto / Auto	It automatically switches between heat exchange mode and bypass mode by temperature detection.
│ \$\$\$ / \$\$\]	To switch the temperature, please see the Installation Manual 6.4.4 Auto bypass.
HeatEX	Heat exchange mode
Bypass →	Bypass mode.

■Controller operation-Function settings



Main functions

	Function name	Function	Setting method and operation description	Detailed setting method
1	Boost/Purge preset	Turns off the Boost/ Purge timer.	«Main display» Select the ventilation air volume ۲۰۰۰ or ۲۰۰۰ .	Instruction Manual: Section 5 Boost/Purge preset.
			Operation description: Returns to the base notch after a certain time of operation.	
2	Silent mode	Prevents the noise at night.	«Main menu», «User options» Set weekdays and On/Off times.	Instruction Manual: Section 5 Silent mode.
2			Operation description: Does not receive any external input during the specified period.	Installation Manual: Section 6.4.5.
3	Manual bypass mode	Changes the bypass ventilation timer.	«Main display» In the ventilation mode, select the bypass mode. Operation description: Returns to the heat exchange mode after a certain time.	Instruction Manual: Section 5 Manual bypass mode. Installation Manual: Section 6.4.2.7.
4	Holiday mode	Saves energy in the long absence.	«Main menu», «User options» Select the Holiday mode.	Instruction Manual: Section 5 Holiday mode.
5	Filter Maintenance indicator	Shows a filter cleaning sign every half year (factory default settings).	Operation description: Operates with small air volumes «Main menu», «Maintenance» Reset the notification timing after cleaning the filters.	Instruction Manual: Section 5 Filter information. Installation Manual: Section 6.4.11.

Clock

Button operation

1

C



Select [User options] from the «Main menu» screen, and

press the \odot button.

Select [Clock] and press the \odot button.

Note

- Clock setting is required before making the following settings.
- Boost/Purge preset
- Silent mode
- · Manual bypass mode
- Holiday mode

Increase or decrease the value, and press the \bigcirc button. A confirmation screen will appear.

Navigating through the screens

- To go back to the «Main menu» screen (III)
- To return to the previous screen

ഗ

Boost/Purge preset



The Boost/Purge preset is the function that automatically sets the time to return to the [Base notch].

When **S** (Boost) or **S** (Purge) is selected on the «Main display» screen, the fan speed will return to the [Base Notch] automatically after a certain period of time.

During the Boost/Purge preset, appear icon ${}^{\circ}$ in «Main display» screen.

The Base notch is set to fan speed 1 S[•] at the factory default setting.

Button operation

2



Boost/Purge preset

▼ Cursor ▲ I — Time +

F3

F4

 (\mathbf{h})

F2

No/Yes

30 min

Timer ▶ Stop in

Select: 🗸

F1

Select Boost/Purge preset from «User options» screen, and press the \bigcirc button.

[Timer]: Select [Yes] or [No].

[No]: You can set no time limit.

[Yes]: You can use [Stop in] operation.

[Stop in]: Time can be selected from 10, 20, 30, ... 170, 180 min.

The factory default setting: 30 min
Silent mode



The Silent mode is an effective mode for noise prevention at night.

During the Silent mode, 🕑 icon will appear on the «Main display» screen.

Note

Under the Silent mode, the signal from the external input and operates are not received.

Button operation



Manual bypass mode



At the factory default settings, the Bypass mode cannot be selected on the «Main display». Use the Manual bypass mode at any timing to operate the Bypass mode.

During the Manual bypass mode, \Im icon is displayed on the «Main display».

The Manual bypass mode ends after the specified time.

Note If outdoor temperature is below 8°C, the ventilation mode will not change to the Bypass.

Button operation



Setting method of the Manual bypass mode.

Select [Manual bypass mode] from the «User options» screen.



You can set the operation time of the Manual bypass mode. [Stop in]: Time can be selected from 1, 2, ... 11, 12 hour.

[Fan]: You can select Fan speed of the Manual bypass mode.

The factory default settings: 4 hour and Fan speed is [Base notch].

Holiday mode



The Holiday mode is used when you are away from home for a long time.

I icon will appear on the «Main display».

The product starts the operation at the fan speed of the base notch.

S	and	S	will o	operate	at	50%	of the	airflow.
---	-----	---	--------	---------	----	-----	--------	----------

	Holiday mode					
	ON					
S .	S •× 50%					
S	S •• × 50%					
S	S 🛋 × 100%					
SS 11	S 📶 × 100%					

Button operation



Select [Holiday mode] from «User options» screen, and press the \bigcirc button.

[Mode set]: Select [Yes] / [No]. The factory default setting: *No*

[Yes]: You can set day when you are not in house.

.



After pressing the \bigcirc button the Holiday mode starts.



Error information

When an error occurs, the following screen will appear. Check the error status, stop the product, and consult your dealer.



Error code, error unit, unit model name, and serial number will appear.

The model name and serial number will appear only if the information have been registered.

Press the F1 or F2 button to go to the next screen.

Contact information (dealer's phone number) will appear if the information have been registered.

Press the F4 button to reset the error information.

6. Maintenance * The figure shows R-type.

Care of filters

Remove dust and dirt on air filters at regular intervals in order to prevent a deterioration in the functions.

Clean it at least once every 6 months.



will appear on the «Main display» when the filter needs to be cleaned. Factory default setting is 6 months.

Make sure to turn off the isolator before cleaning and maintenance.

Failure to heed this warning may result in electric shock or injury.

Wear gloves during cleaning and maintenance. Failure to wear gloves may result in injury.

During cleaning and maintenance, do not climb on an unstable stand.

Injury may result if you tumble down.

1) Turn off the isolator on the power board before removing filters.



2) Remove the filter cover (outdoor air filter and exhaust air filter).



3) Gently draw out the outdoor air filter case and the exhaust air filter case.



When removing the outdoor air filter case and exhaust filter case, dew condensation water that has built up indoor sometimes drips. So, remove the filter cases gently by supporting them with both hands so that they are not tilted.

4) Remove the air filters from the outdoor air filter case and the exhaust air filter case.



5) Remove the dust with a vacuum cleaner.



When the filter is heavily soiled, press and wash the filter with cold or warm water (40 $^{\circ}$ C or less), and then air-dry the filter.

Note

- Do not wash the filter as below, otherwise it can be distorted.
 - Do not wash the filter with hot water.
 - Do not wash the filter by rubbing or scrubbing.
 - Do not squeeze or twist the filter.



- When a filter is damaged or it has been washed with water about four times, replace with the Replacement Filter (sold separately).
- After replacing the filters, dispose of the used outdoor air filters and exhaust air filters for in accordance with disposal methods designated in the region where you live.

Outdoor air filters and exhaust air filters are made of PET and acrylic fibers.

How to replace filters (sold separately)

Remove the outdoor air filters or exhaust air filters, and install new filters (sold separately).

Note

- Make sure to install filters in the filter case before installing the filter case on the product.
- Do not mix up outdoor air filters and exhaust air filters.

Assembling and checking after cleaning and maintenance

Securely install parts after cleaning and maintenance.

Injury could result if parts fall. The filters' catch efficiency drops.

- 1. Install the filter on the filter case by following the disassembly procedure in reverse.
 - Make sure that the filter is not protruded from the filter case.



- 2. Install the outdoor air filter case and then install the filter cover.
- 3. Install the exhaust air filter case and then install the filter cover.
- 4. When you have finished assembling all, turn on the isolater and check followings,
 - Check for emission of abnormal noise.
 - Check for normal air flow.
 - Check for air leakage from the installation section of the outdoor air filter case or exhaust air filter case.
- 5. Reset the filter cleaning sign.
 - For details on how to reset the filter cleaning sign, see section 5. *Filter information*.

Note

- In some operating environments, dew condensation water or snow/mist water droplets may adhere to the filters. This, however, is not a problem in product performance or quality.
- Do not forget to install the filters inside the product. (Doing so results in dirt clogging the surface of the heat exchanger or a drop in air volume.)
- Use an optional dust catch filter (Standard filter, Medium filter, PM2.5 filter (sold separately)) to suit your specific application if you are worried about small insects getting inside or small dirt or dust particles.

Care of the controller

To remove dirt from the controller's display, wipe with a cloth to which detergent has bee applied: and then wipe with a dry cloth to remove any remaining detergent.

Do not use the following solvents.(They will change the quality and color.)

Paint thinner, alcohol, benzene, gasoline, kerosene, spray cleaner, cleaning alkali, etc.

7. Troubleshooting

Take the following actions if trouble shown in the table below occurs. If trouble is not corrected even after taking the required action, or if trouble other than that indicated in the following table occurs, turn OFF the isolator, and then contact your dealer or an electrical contractor.

Symptom	Cause	Action
No operation	Power is not supplied to the product.	Check the circuit breaker on the power board.
	The $^{\odot}$ button on the controller is not [ON].	Press the $^{\odot}$ button on the controller to turn on.
There is a sound from the product	The sound of fans moving and the sound of winds flowing.	It is not a malfunction.
Operating noise has	The filter is not installed securely.	Re-install the filter. (see section 6.)
increased	The filter is clogged.	Clean the filter. (see section 6.)
	The outdoor hood is blocked.	Remove obstacles.
Air flow has reduced	The filter is clogged.	Clean the filter. (see section 6.)
Burbling noise from the product	Dew condensation water in the drain pipes is sucked into the wind taken in by the product but is not being discharged.	Reduce the fan speed of the product. The noise will disappear as it becomes easier to discharge the dew condensation water in the drain pipes.
Noise fluctuates	Noise sometimes gets louder because of the influence of outdoor wind. This is not a malfunction.	If you are worried about sound fluctuation, contact your dealer or an electrical contractor.
Dew condensation water in the filter case	Dew condensation water sometimes builds up in some operating environments.	It is not a malfunction.
The volume of the operating noise is different in different rooms	The volume of the noise sometimes differs, for example, because of the length of the piping to each room.	It is not a malfunction.
During winter season, Sometimes supply air stops.	The product is operating in the supply air intermittent mode.	It is not a malfunction. See Automatic supply air stop function/Automatic supply air intermittent operation function. (see next page.)
Supply air flow is cold	The outdoor air temperature is low.	It is not a malfunction. Supply air sometimes is cooled be the outdoor air.
Small insects intrude into the indoor through the supply air vent.	Small insects could intrude into the indoor from the outdoor through the product.	It is not a malfunction. The volume of intruding insects can be reduced by using the high performance filter (optional parts).
Condensation occurs on the outside of the product.	If the outdoor temperature is low or the indoor humidity is high, condensation can occur outside the product.	It is not a malfunction. Remove the condensation with a cloth.
Inside the product or the filters are wet.	Inside the product or the filters can become wet due to fog outdoor or condensation.	It is not a malfunction.
Condensation occurs on the outlet of the supply air vent.	If the outdoor or indoor humidity is high, condensation can occur.	It is not a malfunction. Remove the condensation with a cloth.
The air volume increases/ decreases without any command.	The air volume can increase/decrease automatically if the product receives external input.	It is not a malfunction. Check the setting.

When the controller is not working:

Symptom	Cause	Action
The OFF button does not function to stop the product.	The Enable OFF button is set to invalid. (At factory default settings, the Enable OFF button is set to No.)	It is not a malfunction. If the Enable OFF button is set, turn the isolator OFF to stop the product. To cancel the Enable OFF button setting, see 6.4.2.7 <i>Control mode</i> in the Installation Manual.
Ventilation mode (bypass, auto bypass) cannot be selected.	Due to the skip setting. (At factory default setting, the bypass ventilation is set to Skipped.)	It is not a malfunction. To cancel the skip setting, see <i>6.4.2.7 Control mode</i> in the Installation Manual.
The fan speed (\$., \$., \$. , or \$) cannot be selected.	Due to the skip setting. (At factory default setting, & is Skipped.)	It is not a malfunction. To cancel the skip setting, see <i>6.4.2.7 Control mode</i> in the Installation Manual.
The air volume is changed without any command.	To protect the Heat exchanger from frost in winter, the air volume can increase/decrease.	It is not a malfunction.
	The air volume can increase/decrease automatically if the product receives external input.	
The air volume is not changed even when the product fan speed is changed.	When receiving the external input, the priority is given to it even when the lower fan speed is selected. (External input icon 🕉 is displayed if the fan speed is determined by the external input.)	It is not a malfunction.

Automatic supply air stop function/Automatic supply air intermittent operation function

To protect the Heat exchanger from frost, the product runs the Automatic supply air stop operation/ Automatic supply air intermittent operation when the outdoor air temperature is -3 °C or lower. To prevent frost from adhering to Heat exchanger, the supply air fan is controlled according to the temperatures below.

Outdoor temperature	-15 °C or lower	Between -15°C and -3°C	-3°C or higher
Mode	Supply air stop mode	Supply air intermittent operation	Continuous operation

Note

- Preheater (field supply) is recommended to maintain certain supply air and exhaust air.

- When the outdoor air temperature is -15 °C or lower, the supply air fan run to detect the outdoor air temperature.
- When the outdoor air temperature is -25°C or lower, the supply air fan does not run for the detection of the outdoor air temperature.

8. Specifications

Model		VL-250CZPVU-R-E VL-250CZPVU-L-E			VL-350CZPVU-R-E VL-350CZPVU-L-E			VL-500CZPVU-R-E VL-500CZPVU-L-E					
Electrical power supply			220-240 V / 50 Hz , 220 V / 60 Hz										
Erp Class		A+											
Ventilation mode		Heat recovery mode											
Fan speed		4	3	2	1	4	3	2	1	4	3	2	1
Fan speed icon		S11	S	S	S .	S 1	S	S	S .	S 1	S 41	S	\$
Fan power		100%	70%	50%	30%	100%	70%	50%	30%	100%	70%	50%	30%
Input power	[W]	106	44	23	11	155	71	37	19	275	104	49	21
	[m ³ /h]	250	175	125	75	320	224	160	96	500	350	250	150
Air volume	[L/s]	69	49	35	21	89	62	44	27	139	97	69	42
External static pressure [Pa]		150	74	38	14	150	74	38	14	200	98	50	18
Temperature exchange efficiency [%]		85	87	88	90	85	87	88	90	85	87	89	92
Noise (Sound pressure level *1) [dB]		31	22	16	15>	35	26	19	15>	37	29	22	15>
Weight [kg]			26 32 39										

- The above values are at factory default setting.

- The current, power consumption, efficiency, and noise are measured at the rated air volume and at 230 V / 50 Hz.

- Contact your dealer for other specifications.

*¹ The sound pressure level at 3 m is spherical.

9. After-Sales Service

Consult with your dealer about the after-sales services provided for the product.

If you hear strange noise, if no air is blown out or if some other trouble occurs, turn off the power and contact your dealer. Consult with your dealer concerning the cost of inspection or repair work.

Retention period of functional repair parts

We will retain the functional repair parts for 6 years after terminating production of the product. The functional repair part means a part which is necessary to maintain the function of the product.

Recommended inspection and maintenance

After several years of use, the following might occur. We recommend inspection and maintenance by a professional.

- Water leakage due to clogging of drain pipe and drain hose
- Entry of dust due to deterioration of filters
- Abnormal noise or vibration due to the motor reaching the end of its service life
- Air leakage due to the heat exchanger reaching the end of its service life

The following are consumables:

- Motor
- Outdoor air filter
- Exhaust air filter
- Heat exchanger

Repair costs include technical fee, cost of parts, (and business trip charges), etc.

Manufactured by: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION

Video Entry User Manual

YOUR ENTROVIEW PLUS VIDEO HANDSET USER GUIDE



The visitor presses the button for your flat number or dials your number on the main entrance panel



Your video handset will ring and the video monitor will display an image of the caller. If the call is not answered the system will reset to allow other calls.



Pick up your handset if you wish to speak.



when on. See no 7 for more info.

3. Door open button. Opens main entrance

green when door is open. Wait 10 secs

before pressing "door open" after lifting

 You can adjust the call tone volume by sliding this switch. Push the switch once = low, twice = medium,

door and allows the caller to enter. Glows

2. Button not used.

three times = high.

handset.

If you press the "door open" button the main entrance panel will beep. Your visitor can now enter.



Please ask your visitor to ensure the door closes behind them. Replace your handset now.



If you do not want to be disturbed press the "privacy" button once. The red light will come on. Please note: you will not receive any calls for 8 hours when the red light is on. If you wish to receive calls before the 8 hour time-out press the "privacy" button again and the red light will go off.



Remember: it is up to you to control who comes into the building. Only let people in if you are sure of their identity. If you do not wish to speak or let them in simply replace the handset.

CAME [†] ENTROTEC

CAME.COM/ENTROTEC



For your entry into the building place your token to the reader and open the door.



For your exit from the building push the exit button and open the door.

CAME ENTROTEC 5 Ashwood Court 0akbank Livingston EH53 0TL

Tel: 01506 886230 Support: 01506 886235

Thermostat - Towel Rail User Manual



Products > Thermostats and Controllers > Electric Underfloor Heating Thermostats

Heatmiser neoStat-e v2



Benefits:

- Stunning design incorporating soft touch keys
- Non programmable, 5/2 day, 7 day and 24 hour programming
- Air / air & floor / floor only sensing modes
- 3 metre remote floor sensor
- 5 minute program intervals
- Self learning optimum start
- 4 comfort levels / times per day
- Holiday facility
- Automatic blue back light (turns off after 30 seconds)
- Flush mounting
- ° C/° F selectable
- Safety lock facility
- Frost protection

Stock Code

Heatmiser neoStat-e v2 is a programmable thermostat allowing control of your electric heating system. The neoStat-e v2 integrates with the Heatmiser neoHub to allow for central control of your heating system.

The neoStat-e v2 is the smart way to control your heating and hot water from anywhere. Control up to 32 rooms from your iPhone, Android or Windows Phone. Heatmiser neoStat-e's are stylish, slimline and discreet and are perfect for controlling hydronic underfloor heating systems.

Supplied with a 3 metre remote floor sensor and is capable of switching up to 16A and communicates to the neoHub and other neoStats within your home, to create a fully controllable network system of your home heating.

Technical Specification	
Temperature range:	5-35° C, 41-95° F
White back lit screen:	Y
Non-programmable mode:	Y
5/2 day programming mode:	Y
7 day programming mode:	Y
24 hour mode:	Y
Number of heating levels:	4
Optimum start:	Y
Number of switching times (timer mode):	4
Holiday function:	Y
Temperature hold function:	Y
Temperature override:	Y
Temperature override limit:	Y
Output delay:	Y
Frost protection (7° C - 17° C):	Y
Built in air sensor:	Y
Remote air sensor:	Y
Floor sensing mode:	Y
Remote probe included:	N
Floor temperature limit protection:	Y
Max switching differential:	16A
Accuracy:	1° C
Adjustable switching differential:	1° C – 3° C
Supply:	230V AC
Installed dimensions (L x H x D):	85 x 85 x 13mm
Weight:	153g

Product Name

Colour

HM – neoStat-e v2	Heatmiser neoStat-e v2	Glacier White
HM – neoStat-e – Black v2	Heatmiser neoStat-e v2	Sapphire Black

Telephone 01359 242400 Fax 01359 242525

Thermostat - Heating User Manual









Product Image	1
Table of Contents	2
What is a Programmable Room Thermostat?	3-4
Installation Procedure	5-6
Mode Select	7
Mode 1 - Thermostat	8
LCD Display	9-10
Power On/OFF	11
Setting the Time & Date	12
Temperature Display	13
Pairing Accessories	14-15
View Accessories	16
Removing Accessories	17
Edit Comfort Levels	18-19
Temperature Control	20
Temperature Hold	21
Advance	22
Frost Protection	23

Locking/Unlocking the Touch V2	24
Holiday	25
Optional Settings Explained	26-27
Optional Settings - Feature Table	28
Adjusting the Optional Settings	29
Fail Safe/Modbus	30
Recalibrating the Touch V2	31
Error Codes	31
Wiring Diagrams	32-35
Made 2. The offers	
Mode 2 - Time Clock	36
LCD Display	36 37-38
LCD Display Setting the Switching Times	36 37-38 39
LCD Display Setting the Switching Times Timer Advance	36 37-38 39 40
LCD Display Setting the Switching Times Timer Advance Timer Override	37-38 39 40 41
LCD Display Setting the Switching Times Timer Advance Timer Override Optional Settings Explained	37-38 39 40 41 42
LCD Display Setting the Switching Times Timer Advance Timer Override Optional Settings Explained Optional Settings - Feature Table	37-38 39 40 41 42 42
LCD Display Setting the Switching Times Timer Advance Timer Override Optional Settings Explained Optional Settings - Feature Table Adjusting the Optional Settings	36 37-38 39 40 41 42 42 42 43
ILCD Display Setting the Switching Times Timer Advance Timer Override Optional Settings Explained Optional Settings - Feature Table Adjusting the Optional Settings Replacing the Battery	36 37-38 39 40 41 42 42 42 43 44

What is a Programmable Room Thermostat?

A programmable room thermostat is both a programmer and a room thermostat.

A programmer allows you to set "On" and "Off" periods to suit your own lifestyle.

A room thermostat works by sensing the air temperature, switching on the heating when the air temperature falls below the thermostat setting, and switching it off once this set temperature has been reached.

So a programmable room thermostat lets you choose what times you want the heating to be on, and what temperature it should reach while it is on. It will allow you to select different temperatures in your home at different times of the day (and days of the week) to meet your particular needs and preferences.

Setting a programmable room thermostat to a higher temperature will not make the room heat up any faster. How quickly the room heats up depends on the design and size of the heating system.

Similarly reducing the temperature setting does not affect how quickly the room cools down. Setting a programmable room thermostat to a lower temperature will result in the room being controlled at a lower temperature, and saves energy.

The way to set and use your programmable room thermostat is to find the lowest temperature settings that you are comfortable with at the different times you have chosen, and then leave it alone to do its job.

The best way to do this is to set the room thermostat to a low temperature – say 18° C, and then turn it up by 1° C each day until you are comfortable with the temperature. You won't have to adjust the thermostat further. Any adjustment above this setting will waste energy and cost you more money.

You are able to temporarily adjust the heating program by overriding or using the temperature hold feature. These features are explained further on pages 20 and 21 of this manual.

Programmable room thermostats need a free flow of air to sense the temperature, so they must not be covered by curtains or blocked by furniture. Nearby electric fires, televisions, wall or table lamps may also prevent the thermostat from working properly.



Installation Procedure

Do

Mount the Touch V2 at eye level.

Read the instructions fully so you get the best from our product.



Don't

Do not install near to a direct heat source as this will affect functionality. Do not push hard on the LCD screen as this may cause irreparable damage.

This thermostat is designed to be flush mounted and requires a back box of 35mm (minimum depth) to be sunk into the wall prior to installation.

Step 1

Using a small screwdriver, slightly loosen the screw from the bottom face of the thermostat. You can then carefully separate the front half from the back plate.

Step 2

Place the Touch V2 LCD front plate somewhere safe.

Terminate the Touch V2 as shown in the diagrams on page 32-35 of this booklet.

Step 3

Screw the Touch V2 back plate securely into the back box.

Step 4

Replace the front of the thermostat onto the back plate, by locating the pins in the socket then insert the top edge first. Now push in the bottom edge, securing it in place with the retaining screw.





mode is the default setting. To change between thermostat & time clock modes, follow these steps.

- \odot Press and **hold** the ⁽¹⁾ key for 3 seconds At this point the screen will go blank showing only 0, 'CLOCK' and 'SETUP'. SETUP Press and **hold** 'SETUP' for 10 seconds • The Touch V2 will factory reset then provide 2 selectable mode options. Use the Left / Right keys to scroll between modes Mode 1 = Thermostat Mode 2 = Time ClockNote: the selected option will flash. DONE Press 'DONE' to confirm selection . \odot Press the 🕲 key once
 - The Touch V2 will reset all parameters and restart in the selected mode.

The Touch V2 can either be used as a thermostat or a time clock. Thermostat

Note: The Mode Select function will reset all parameters (Wireless Air Sensors and Window/Door Contacts excluded) that were entered during the set-up operations. These processes must be repeated after the restart has completed.









LCD Display

- 1. Holiday Displayed when the thermostat is in holiday mode.
- 2. Frost Protection Displayed when frost protection is enabled or activated by a Window/Door Switch.
- Flame Symbol Displayed when the thermostat is calling for heat and flashes when optimum start is active.
- 4. Advanced Until Displayed when the Touch V2 is advanced to the next programmed comfort level.
- 5. Day Indicator Displays the day of the week.
- 6. Hold Left Displayed when a temperature hold is active, the remaining time will be shown.
- 7. Clock Time displayed in 24 hour format.
- 8. Active Status Indication for 'Preheat' and 'Frost Protection' modes.
- Sensor Warning Flashes on screen when the Touch V2 has failed to receive a signal from a Wireless Sensor or Window/Door Switch.
- 10. Window Icon Displays when Window/Door Switch is triggered.
- Floor Limit Symbol Displayed when the floor probe has reached the floor temperature limit configured in the setup menu.
- Floor/Room Temp & Set Indicates the displayed sensor mode and when changes are being made to the current set point.
- 13. Program Indicator Displayed during programming (6 level mode) to show which level is being altered.
- 14. Up/down keys Increase/decrease of lower digit group.
- 15. Program Indicator Displayed during programming (4 level mode) to show which level is being altered.
- 16. Navigation/Programming keys Used to configure the Touch V2.
- 17. View Floor Temperature Key Used to change display to show floor temperature.
- 18. Keypad Lock Indicator Displayed when the keypad is locked.
- Accessory Low Battery indication indicates if an attached accessory such as a window switch, has a low battery.
- 20. Temperature Displays the current sensor temperature.
- 21. Temperature Format Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.
- 22. Up/down keys Increase/decrease of higher digit group.
- 23. Time/Day/Month/Year Displays when setting the Clock/Calendar or a Holiday Period.

Model: Touch V2



The heating is indicated ON when the flame icon is displayed.

When the Flame Icon is absent, there is no requirement for heating to achieve the set temperature but the Touch V2 remains active.

To turn the Touch V2 off completely, press and **hold** the $m{O}$ key for approximately

3 seconds until the display goes blank

The display and heating output will be turned OFF.

To turn the Touch V2 back ${\sf ON}$, press the ${m O}$ key

Thermostat completely OFF







 \odot

(C)



To set the clock, follow these steps.

- Press and hold the ⁽¹⁾ key for 3 seconds
 At this point the screen will go blank showing only ⁽¹⁾, 'CLOCK' and 'SETUP'.
- Tap the 'CLOCK' key
- The 'Hour' digits will now flash
- Use the 'Up/Down' arrow keys followed by 'NEXT' to set the 'Hours'
- Use the 'Up/Down' arrow keys followed by 'NEXT' to set the 'Minutes' Repeat the previous two steps to set the date ('Day, Month & Year'). Display will go blank once completed.
- Press the 'DONE' key followed by
 to return to the main display

 \odot

CLOCK

NEXT

NEXT

DONE

0

Temperature Display

The Touch V2 can be configured for different sensor options such as built in sensor, floor sensor or both. The display will clearly indicate which sensor is being used by showing either 'ROOM TEMP' or 'FLOOR TEMP' to the left the actual value.



Room Temperature

Floor Temperature

When the Touch V2 is set to use both the air & the floor sensor, the room temperature will be displayed by default.

To view the current floor temperature, press the FLOOR key.		
the floor temperature will be displayed for 10 seconds	FLOOR	l



Pairing Accessories

Wireless Air Sensor. Door/Window - Wireless Contact Sensor (Not available in Time Clock mode).

You can pair a total of 16 accessories to a single Touch V2 thermostat.

Wireless Air Sensor

Once a remote sensor is added, the Touch V2 will automatically display an average temperature between the 'Wireless Air Sensor' and the on-board sensor inside the thermostat. Averaging will also be calculated between multiple Air Sensors.

Window/Door Wireless Contact Sensor

If any one of the 'Window/Door' contacts is broken, the Touch V2 thermostat will be alerted and will activate 'Frost Protection' mode.

The display will now show the icon (right) to indicate a window or door has been opened. Heating will not resume while this icon remains on screen.

Pairing the Air Sensor and Window/Door Contact.

- Press and **hold** the ⁽¹⁾ key for 3 seconds to turn off the display
- Press the 'Setup' key.....
- Press 'Down' key until you see the letter 'P' displayed at the top of the screen then press 'NEXT'.....





The thermostat will now start a 99 second countdown. During this time multiple sensors can be added.



 On the 'Air Sensor & Window/Door Contact', press and hold the pairing button for 5 seconds. The LED will glow red to indicate pairing status



If the sensor has successfully paired, the LED will go out after a few seconds. The thermostat display will then show '01:P' to indicate that the first accessory has joined. If countdown time elapses before all accessories have been paired, restart the countdown to add further sensors following the previous steps.







There are two ways to remove an accessory from the Touch V2 thermostat.

On the Sensor/Switch

• Press and hold down the pairing/reset button for 15 seconds on the 'Sensor/Switch'. LED indicator will flash 3 times to confirm reset.



At this point the 'Sensor/Contact' will notify the Touch V2 that it has left, and will automatically be removed from the 'Accessory Menu'.

On the Touch V2 thermostat

- Follow the steps on page 16 to enter the accessory menu.
- Press the 'Up/Down' arrow keys to view the accessory that will be deleted.....
- Press and hold down the 'DONE' button for 10 seconds until the sensor disappears from the menu

Note: You will also need to reset the sensor at this point.

DONE



The Touch V2 offers three program mode options; Weekday/Weekend, 7 Day and 24 Hour programming. There is also the option to use the Touch V2 as a manual thermostat.

The thermostat is supplied with comfort levels already factory programmed, but these can be changed easily. The default times and temperature settings are;

07:00 - 21°C (Wake) 09:00 - 16°C (Leave) 16:00 - 21°C (Return) 22:00 - 16°C (Sleep)

Unused levels must be set to --:-- so that the Touch V2 will skip these and continue on to the next programmed time.

For Weekday/Weekend programming, the four comfort levels are the same for Mon-Fri, but can be different for Sat-Sun. For 7 Day programming each day of the week can have four different comfort levels. In 24 Hour mode all days are programmed with the same comfort levels.

•	To program the 'Comfort Levels', press the 'EDIT' key	EDIT	J

- Use the 'DAY' key to select day/period of week (the selection will flash)
- Press 'NEXT' to confirm selection

 NEXT

'WAKE' will now flash and the current time and temperature setting will be shown

DAY

•	Use the 'Up/Down' key at the top to set the 'Hours' & 'Minutes'
•	Use the 'Up/Down' keys in the center to set the temperature
•	Press the 'Right' arrow key
	'LEAVE' will now flash and the current settings will be displayed.
	Repeat these steps above to set all comfort levels.
	For any unused periods set time to:
•	Press 'DONE' to confirm and save the settings
You are able to program up to a maximum of 6 levels. Enable this in the feature menu.	
Program Type = 01 (see pages 26-29).	



Note: This new temperature override is maintained only until the next programmed comfort level. At that time, the thermostat will revert back to the programmed levels.

Alternatively, to cancel this override, press the Up or Down key CANC then press 'CANCEL'

Model Touch V2


The temperature hold function allows you to manually override the current operating program and set a different temperature for a desired period.

HOLD

NEXT

DONE

HOLI

CANCE

EDIT

- Press the 'Hold' key once.....
- Use the 'Up/Down' keys to set the desired 'Hold' time (Hours)
 then press 'NEXT'

Minutes will now flash.

- Use the 'Up/Down' keys to set the desired 'Hold' time (Minutes).....
- Use the 'Up/Down' keys to set the desired 'Hold' temperature
- Press 'DONE' to confirm selection

You will see the 'HOLD LEFT' indication is displayed on screen. The time will countdown the set duration and then revert to the normal program.

Cancel/Edit Temperature Hold

- Press the 'Hold' key once
- Press 'CANCEL' to cancel the Hold and return to normal operation
- Alternatively, press the 'EDIT' key to adjust current 'Hold' settings

To edit 'Hold' settings follow the same procedure as indicated in the steps at the top of this page.



This feature allows the next 'Comfort Level' setting to be brought forward and become active before its pre-programmed time. *Note: Multiple advances aren't allowed.*

To enable 'Advance'

Press the 'ADVANCE' key once
 ADVANC
 'ADVANCED UNTIL' time and the 'SET' temperature will now be displayed.

CANCEL

- Press 'DONE' to confirm selection
- To change the 'SET' temperature during 'Advance', use the 'Up/Down' keys followed by 'DONE' to confirm

To cancel 'Advance'

Press the 'Advance' key once, then press 'CANCEL'

Model: Touch V2

DONE

'Advanced

Until' time

Level

Until

Advanced

ADVANC

CANCE

ADVANCED UNTIL 15:00

DONE



The frost icon will toggle ON/OFF each time the 🕲 key is pressed

0

In this mode, the Touch V2 will display the frost icon and will only turn the heating 'ON' should the room temperature drop below the set frost temperature. If the heating is turned 'ON' whilst in frost mode, the flame symbol will be displayed.

To cancel the frost protect mode, press the 🕲 key again



Locking the Touch V2 Display

The Touch V2 has a keypad lock facility. To activate the lock follow these steps.

- Press and hold the 'HOLD' key for 3 seconds
 HOLD
 The display will show 0000. At this point enter a four digit pin number.
- Use the 'Up/Down' keys to set the first two digits
- Press 'NEXT'
- Use the 'Up/Down' keys to set the next two digits
- Press 'DONE'
 DONE

The display will return to the main screen and display the keypad lock indicator.

Note: The keypad lock indicator is only displayed when the lock is active.

Unlocking the Touch V2 Display

•	To unlock the Touch V2 press any key once	
	The display will show 0000. At this point enter the four digit pin number you set previously.	
	At this point enter the road digit pinnamber you set previously.	
•	Use the 'Up/Down' keys to set the first two digits	<u> </u>
•	Press 'NEXT'	NEXT
•	Use the 'Up/Down' keys to set the next two digits	
	Press 'DONE'	DONE
he d	lisplay will unlock and return to the main screen.	

NEXT



In time clock mode: the timed output will be turned off during the holiday period. then return to the programmed settings once the holiday period finishes.

In thermostat mode; the holiday function reduces the set temperature in your home to the frost mode temperature setting that is configured in the setup menu.

The Touch V2 will maintain this temperature for the duration of the holiday and will then automatically return to the program mode on your return.

To set a 'Holiday'

•	Press the 'HOLIDAY' key once	HOLIDAY
•	Enter the return time (hours) by using the 'Up/Down' keys then press 'NEXT' to confirm	▲ ▼ NEXT
•	Enter the return time (minutes) by using the 'Up/Down' keys then press 'NEXT' to confirm	▲ ▼ NEXT
•	Repeat these steps to set 'Day', 'Month' & 'Year'	
•	Press 'DONE' to confirm	DONE
	The display will now show 🛪 and indicate 'Frost Protection Active'	
	To view or change the 'Set' frost temperature while in 'Holiday' mode, press the 'Up/Down' keys followed by 'DONE' to confirm	







THE FOLLOWING SETTINGS ARE OPTIONAL AND IN MOST CASES NEED NOT BE ADJUSTED.

Viewing Accessories: Current status of each accessory, remote sensors and window switches.

Pairing Accessories: to a wireless room sensor or window switch.

Temperature Format: This function allows you to select between °C and °F.

Switching Differential: This function allows you to increase the switching differential of the thermostat. The default is 1° C which means that with a set temperature of 20°C, the thermostat will switch the heating on at 19° C and off at 20°C. With a 2° C differential, the heating will switch on at 18° C and off at 20°C.

Condition: Whilst "Optimum Start" is in effect the 'Switching Differential' shall default to 1°C/F

Output Delay: To prevent rapid switching, an output delay can be entered. This can be set from 00 - 15 minutes. The default is 00 which means there is no delay. Condition: Output delay will not be in effect while 'Optimum Start' is running.

Temperature Up/Down Limit: This function allows you to limit the use of the up and down keys. This limit is also applicable when the thermostat is locked and so allows limited control of the heating system.

Sensor Selection: On this thermostat, you can select which sensor should be used. You can select between air temperature only, floor temperature, or both. When you enable both sensors, the floor sensor is used as a floor limiting sensor and is designed to prevent the floor from overheating. Floor Temp Limit: When the Floor Sensor has been enabled in feature 05, you can set a floor limiting temperature from 20-45°C, this protects the floor from overheating. (28°C is the default).

Note: 'Air Sensor Only' MUST NOT be used to control electric underfloor heating. Floor Sensor or Both Air & Floor should be used.

Optimum Start: Optimum start will delay enabling of the heating system to the latest possible moment avoiding unnecessary heating and ensure the building has reached its desired temperature at the programmed time. The thermostat uses the rate of change information to calculate how long the heating needs to raise the building temperature 1°C.

Rate of Change: Number of minutes to raise the temperature by 1°C. *Note: The user cannot change this feature and is for information only.*

Programming Mode: The following program modes are available;

- Non-Programmable Basic up/down override temperature control.
- 5/2 Day Programming 4 levels for the weekdays and 4 different levels for the weekend.
- 7 Day Programming 4 levels for each day.
- 24 Hours 4 levels over a 24 hour period.

Daylight Saving Time (DST): is where the thermostat sets the clocks forward one hour from 'Standard Time' during the summer months, and back again in autumn, in order to make better use of natural daylight.

Communications ID: To interface with building management systems using the standard Modbus protocol.

Program Type: You can select between 4 or 6 program heating levels.



Optional Settings - Feature Table

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION	SETTING
A	Viewing Accessory	Information only
Р	Pairing Accessories	Commences countdown from 99 – 00 seconds.
01 Menu Entry Point	Temperature Format	$00 = ^{\circ}C, 01 = ^{\circ}F (00 = Default)$
02	Switching Differential	00 = 0.5°C, 01 = 1.0°C (Default) 02 = 2.0°C, 03 = 3.0°C
03	Output Delay	00 - 15 Minutes (00 = Default)
04	Up/Down Temperature Limit	00° - 10°C (00° = Default)
05	Sensor Selection	00 = Built in Sensor with optional wireless Remote Air (Default) 01 = Wireless Remote Air Only 02 = Floor Sensor Only 03 = Built in + Floor Sensor + optional wireless Remote Air 04 = Floor Sensor + Wireless Remote Air Only
06	Floor Temperature Limit	20°C – 45°C (28°C Default)
07	Optimum Start	00 = Disabled (Default) $01 = 1$ Hour $02 = 2$ Hours $03 = 3$ Hours $04 = 4$ Hours $05 = 5$ Hours
08	Rate of Change	Information Only
09	Program Mode	00 = 5/2 $01 = 7$ Day $02 = 24$ Hour 03 = None programmable
10	(DST) Daylight Saving	00 = Disabled (Default) 01 = Enabled
11	Communications ID (Modbus)	01-32 00 = Disabled
12	Program Type	00 = 4 Comfort Levels (Default) 01 = 6 Comfort Levels

Model: Touch V2







If the thermostats on board sensor is disabled and is reliant on a single wireless remote sensor for temperature measurement, failsafe will activate if connection is lost.

- From the moment 'E2' is displayed on screen, failsafe will become active.
- Approximately 12 minutes later the thermostat will enable the heat source for an initial 12 minute period and then repeat every hour.
- Failsafe will continue until the thermostat re-establishes connection to the remote sensor.



Modbus

Modbus interface allows the thermostat to be controlled via home automation or a building management system.

- A maximum of 32 devices can be connected to a single RS485 adapter.
- It is recommended that a foil twisted pair (FTP) cable is used for the Modbus connections.
- All Modbus connections should be daisy chained rather than wired in a star formation.
- If the Touch V2 thermostat is the last Modbus device on the end of the chain, move the toggle switch on the back of the fascia to the 'On' position.



Model: Touch V2



Recalibrating the Touch V2

This thermostat is factory set and need not re-calibrating under normal operation! To calibrate, follow the step below.

()

()

DONE

 \odot

- Press and hold the ⁽¹⁾ key for 3 seconds
 The display will go blank showing only 'Setup' and 'Clock'.
- Press and hold the ⁽¹⁾ key for 10 seconds
 The current temperature will appear on the display.
- Use the 'Up/Down' keys to configure the new temperature value
- Press the 'DONE' key to confirm the change and the display will go blank
- Press the ⁽¹⁾ key once to turn the thermostat 'ON'



Error Codes

The Touch V2 will display an error code if there is a fault with the temperature sensor, these error codes are explained below.

- E0 = The internal sensor has developed a fault.
- E1 = The remote FLOOR probe has not been connected. The remote FLOOR probe has not been wired correctly. The remote FLOOR probe is faulty.
- E2 = The WIRELESS AIR SENSOR has not been paired correctly. The WIRELESS AIR SENSOR has lost connection to the Touch V2. (check batteries).

The remote WIRELESS AIR SENSOR is faulty.



Wiring Diagram - Touch V2 Switch Live Output



This product must only be installed by a qualified electrician and comply with local installation regulations.

Model: Touch V2



Wiring Diagram - Touch V2 Volt Free Output Thermostat & Time Clock Modes



This product must only be installed by a qualified electrician and comply with local installation regulations.



This product must only be installed by a qualified electrician and comply with local installation regulations.



Wiring Diagram - Touch V2 Switch Live to UH8



This product must only be installed by a qualified electrician and comply with local installation regulations.





Model: Touch V2





- 1. Holiday Displayed when the time clock is in holiday mode.
- 2. Advanced Until Displayed when the time clock is advanced to the next programmed comfort level.
- 3. Day Indicator Displays the day of the week.
- Hold Left Displayed when a timer hold is active, the remaining time will be shown.
- 5. Clock Time displayed in 24 hour format.
- 6. Set Indicated when changes are being made to the current set point.
- Program Indicator Displayed during programming, to show which level is being altered.
- 8. Navigation/Programming keys Used to configure the Touch V2.
- 9. Keypad Lock Indicator Displayed when the keypad is locked.
- 10. Timer On/Off Indicates state of time clock output.
- 11. Up/down keys Increase/decrease of higher digit group.
- Time/Day/Month/Year Displays when setting the Clock/Calendar or a Holiday Period.

O Setting the Switching Times

To program the 'Switching times', press the 'EDIT' key	EDIT
- Use the 'DAY' key to select day/period of week (the selection will flash)	DAY
Press 'NEXT' to confirm selection	NEXT
'WAKE' will now flash and the ON time will be displayed	
Use the 'Up/Down' key at the top to set the 'Hours' & 'Minutes'	
Press Next	NEXT
The OFF time will now be displayed	
Use the 'Up/Down' key at the top to set the 'Hours' & 'Minutes'	
Press the right arrow key	\blacktriangleright
'Leave' will now flash and the ON time will be displayed	
Repeat the steps above to set all switching time levels	
For any unused periods set time to:	
Press 'DONE' to confirm and save the settings	DONE



This feature allows the next 'Switching time level' setting to be brought forward and become active before its pre-programmed time. Note: Multiple advances aren't allowed.

To enable 'Advance'



Model: Touch V2

🙃 Timer Override

To override the timed output 'ON/OFF', follow these steps.

- Press the 'Hold' key once
 HoLD
 Use the 'Up/Down' keys to set the desired 'Hold' time (Hours) then press 'NEXT' ...
 Next
 Minutes will now flash.
- Use the 'Up/Down' keys to set the desired 'Hold' time (Minutes)
- Use the 'Up/Down' keys in the center to adjust the output state

The time will countdown the set duration and then revert to the normal program.

To cancel Timer Override

Press 'HOLD' then press 'CANCEL'



Programming Mode: The following program modes are available;

5/2 Day Programming - 4 On/Off switching times for the weekdays and 4 On/Off switching times for the weekend.

7 Day Programming - 4 individual On/Off switching times for each day.

24 Hours - 4 On/Off switching times over a 24 hour period.

Daylight Saving Time (DST): is where the thermostat sets the clocks forward one hour from Standard Time during the summer months, and back again in autumn, in order to make better use of natural daylight.

Communications ID: To interface with building management systems using the standard Modbus protocol.



FEATURE	SETTING
Program Mode	00 = 5/2 (Default), 01 = 7 Day, 02 = 24 Hour
Daylight Saving Time (DST)	00 = Disabled (Default) 01 = Enabled
Communications ID	01-32 (00 = Disabled)



- Press and **hold** the **(**key for 3 seconds The display will go blank showing only $m{O}$ 'Setup' and 'Clock'
- SETU Press the 'SETUP' key once

 \odot



Press the 🕲 key once



In most cases the 3 volt lithium battery does not need replacing if the thermostat has a continual power supply. Its sole purpose is to ensure correct time keeping during a power loss to the thermostat.

To remove the battery use a small flat head screw driver or fingertip to push back the brass retaining bracket. This will automatically release the battery.

Insert the new battery (**positive side up**!) by locating one end underneath the **holding clips** then pushing down on the opposite end against the brass holding bracket.



We advise that replacement of the lithium battery be carried out by a qualified professional.

Model: Touch V2



Want More Information?

Call our support team on: +44 (0)1254 669090

Or view technical specifications directly on our website: www.heatmiser.com



HIU User Manual



Operating Guide

Termix VVX-I-R FI - 7 Series DS fully insulated





Table of contents

Introduction3
Warranty and product liability3
Glossary of technical terms4
Key to symbols4
Materials4
Unit label5
Functional specification6
Personal protective equipment6
Warning of dangerous situations that can arise with reasonably foreseeable misuse6
Safety notes7
Handling, transport and storage8
Handling8
Transport and storage8
Assembly, installation and commissioning
Unpacking and preparation8
Lifting instructions9
Dismantling the insulation front10
Mounting and installation11
Commissioning11
Design12
Schematic description - Termix VVX-I-R FI RAD13
Schematic description - Termix VVX-I-R FI UFH14
Electrical connections and wiring15
Wiring diagram - radiator heating16
Wiring diagram - underfloor heating16
Fitting of energy meter17
Filling of the primary heating system18
Filling of the secondary heating system19
Start-up
Underfloor heating

Operating Guide - Components	
Heating controls	21
Thermoactuators	21
RAVK controller (35-75 °C)	21
Differential pressure controller	
Circulator pump UPM3	
Grundfos UPM3 AUTO instructions	
IMIT Thermostat	24
Safety valve	24
Waste adaptor	24
DHW Temperature control	25
Pressure absorber	
DHW Re-circulation	
Maintenance	
Troubleshooting	
Troubleshooting	
Deactivation and dismantling	
Disposal	
Declaration of conformity	
Pre hand over check list	

Danfoss

Introduction

This heat interface unit is intended for connecting to a heat network for the production of both domestic hot water and space heating. Read through the instructions before starting installation work. Pay particular attention to the safety precautions. The manufacturer assumes no responsibility for failure to follow the instructions. This applies to both personal injury and product damage.

The following operating conditions must be carried out in accordance with the directions below:

Assembly, installation and commissioning

General assembly, installation and commissioning must be carried out by a qualified and authorised HVAC technician. All electrical connections must be carried out by an authorised electrician.

Daily operations

After correct installation and commissioning, under normal circumstances further adjustment of the unit will not be necessary.

Maintenance and cleaning

Regular maintenance of the heat interface unit is shown in the section "maintenance". This section also describes the cleaning procedures.

Dismantling

Dismantling the heat interface unit must be carried out by an authorised and qualified HVAC technician. For further information regarding disposal, please refer to the section "disposal".

Warranty and product liability

Danfoss A/S' area of responsibility does not include balancing, scope of works or mounting and correct connection of the unit. If changes are carried out to the heat interface unit's configuration or structure, the manufacturer can assume no responsibility. The warranty does not cover incorrect use of the product.



Glossary of technical terms

DHW	Domestic hot water
DCW	Domestic cold water
HWC	Hot water circulation
DHF	Heat network supply
DHR	Heat network return
HFL	Heating supply
HRL	Heating return

Key to symbols



Materials

Corrosion protection

All pipes and components are manufactured in stainless steel and brass. The chloride content in the flow medium should not exceed 150 mg/l. The risk of corrosion increases significantly if the recommended chloride content is exceeded.

REACH

All products from Gemina Termix A/S meet the requirements in REACH. One of the requirements in REACH is to inform customers of any content of materials on the REACH candidate list. We hereby inform customers of a material on the candidate list. The product contains brass parts, which contain lead (CAS no: 7439-92-1) in a concentration over 0.1% w/w.

Danfoss

Unit label

K68989 2020-08-20 UK97653116
K68989 2020-08-20 UK97653116
2020-08-20 UK97653116
UK97653116
PN 10
15 Bar
99 °C
tation and thermal expansion ed upon installation. n, the pump must be switched off.

The unit label is affixed to the back plate (Image of a unit label is shown as an example).

Should the unit label become unreadable, damaged or fall off completely, then it must be replaced. New unit label can be ordered.

Danfoss

Functional specification

The heat interface unit is intended for connecting to a heat network for the production of both domestic hot water and space heating. The unit must be connected to the household installation in a frost-free location.

Technical specifications

Specifications:

 $\begin{array}{ll} \text{Max. working pressure:} \\ \text{Max. temperature:} \\ \text{Power connection:} & 230 \text{ V} \\ \text{Sound level:} & \leq 55 \text{ dB} \\ \text{Ambient temp:} & 0 - 40^{\circ}\text{C} \\ (\text{in continuous use}) \end{array}$

Dimensions for connections:

 $\mathsf{DHF} + \mathsf{DHR} + \mathsf{HFL} + \mathsf{HRL} + \mathsf{DCW} + \mathsf{DHW} \text{:} \quad \mathsf{G} \ \texttt{34}'' \ (\text{internal thread})$

Weight:

Dimensions:

Dimensions:

Net weight: Approx. 28 kg

H 690 mm x W 530 mm x D 235 mm

The recommended operational parameters must not be exceeded.

Personal protective equipment



Gloves It is recommended that suitable work gloves are used in connection with handling and lifting of the heat interface

See the unit label on the heat interface unit See the unit label on the heat interface unit

Warning of dangerous situations that can arise with reasonably foreseeable misuse

The risk of personal injury or product damage increases considerably if the recommended operational parameters are exceeded. The unit must always be equipped with safety valves in accordance with local regulations.

Jantos

Safety notes



Read the instructions before start-up

The instructions must be read through before installation and commissioning of the unit. Pay particular attention to the section on safety precautions. The manufacturer assumes no responsibility for failure to follow the instructions. This applies to both personal injury and product



damage.

Installation requirements

The unit must be connected to the household installation in a frost-free location.

Hanging and fastening

It must be ensured that both the wall and the fastenings of the unit can bear the unit's gross weight.

Heat source

The unit is designed for connection to heat network. An alternative energy source can be used as long as the operating conditions are equivalent to heat network at all times.

Handling

All lifting and handling of the heat interface unit must be carried out in an ergonomically responsible manner.

Lifting the unit

When lifting the heat interface unit, only lift by the pipes that are fixed to the back plate. Otherwise, to the extent possible, the heat interface unit must be lifted by the back plate. Please refer to the section "Lifting instructions".

Re-tightening

As the unit has been subjected to vibrations during transport and lifting/handling it is important that all union connections are retightened.

After filling the system with water and once it is in operation, all union connections must be re-tightened again.

Modifications

Modifications to the electrical connections on the heat interface unit may only be carried out by an authorised electrician. If changes are carried out to the heat interface unit's configuration or structure, the manufacturer can assume no responsibility.

Resistance to water on electrical equipment

Electrical components are not protected against water ingress.



Authorised personnel

Assembly, installation, commissioning and maintenance must only be carried out by a qualified and authorised HVAC or electrical technician.



Safety valve

A safety valve(s) must always be fitted in accordance with local regulations.



Connection

The possibility to shut off all energy sources to the heat interface unit at all times must be established, including the electrical connection. It must be ensured that wires and cables do not come into contact with the hot pipes. It must also be ensured that wires and cables are not placed against sharp edges.



Warning of high pressure and temperatures

Particular attention must be given to the installation's permitted system pressure and operating temperature.

The maximum permitted flow temperature and pressure are stated on the unit label.

The risk of personal injury or product damage increases considerably if the recommended operational parameters are exceeded.



Warning of hot surfaces

Particular attention must be given to hot surfaces, as these can cause burns to the skin.



Warning of sharp edges

It is recommended that suitable work gloves are used in connection with handling and lifting of the heat interface unit.

Dantoss

Handling, transport and storage

Handling

All lifting and handling of the heat interface unit must be carried out in an ergonomically responsible manner.

Transport and storage

The unit must be properly packed during both transit and storage.

Transport temperature:-10 to +65°CStorage temperature:+10 to +65°C

When storing the unit prior to installation, it must be stored in a dry, heated place.

If more units are supplied at the same time, they must never be stacked higher than they were at the factory.

Assembly, installation and commissioning

Unpacking and preparation

Remove the packaging from the unit. Cling film and cardboard must be disposed of in accordance with locally applicable legislation.





. . .

Ś

Authorised personnel

Assembly, installation and commissioning must only be carried out by an authorised HVAC technician.

Lifting the unit

When lifting the unit out of the cardboard box, only lift by the pipes that are attached to the back plate. Otherwise, to the extent possible, the heat interface unit must be lifted by the back plate.

In connection with assembly, the unit must be lifted according to the section "lifting instructions".

Warning of transport damage

Before installing the unit, check to ensure the product has not been damaged during transit.

Danfoss

Lifting instructions





Temporarily remove the U-shaped front

Unhook and secure the front









- Lift the heat interface unit in the following two places:
- 1. On the left hand side around the primary strainer.
- 2. On the right hand side around the T-piece below the energy meter.

Now, hang the heat interface unit onto bolts in the wall.

<u>Danfvšš</u>

Dismantling the insulation front



Temporary securing of centre plate



Disassembly of the side frame


Jantoss

Mounting and installation

The existing installation should be flushed out prior to installation.

Follow the symbols indicated on the heat interface unit for correct connection of the pipes. Please refer to the section "Key to symbols".

Adequate space

Please allow adequate space around the heat interface unit for mounting and maintenance purposes.

Orientation

The unit must be mounted so that components, keyholes and labels are placed correctly. If you wish to mount the unit differently please contact your supplier.

Tightening

Due to vibrations during transit, lifting and handling all heat interface unit connections

must be checked and tightened before installation.

Strainer

If a strainer is supplied with the heat interface unit it must be fitted according to schematic diagram. Please note that the strainer may be supplied loose.



Commissioning

Before start-up check that:

- Pipes are connected in accordance with the symbols indicated on the heat interface unit.
- Then slowly open the isolation valve(s) so that the heat interface unit fills with water.
- Ensure that all union fittings and swivel nuts have been re-tightened.
- The heating circuit must be vented before commissioning.
- Monitor the heat interface unit's operation in regard to temperature, pressure, thermal expansion and leaks.
- Provided the heat interface unit functions in accordance with the dimensioning regulations, it can be put into use.



Installation must comply with local standards and regulations.



Hanging and fastening

It must be ensured that both the wall and the fastenings of the unit can bear the unit's gross weight. Please refer to the section "Technical specifications".

Re-tightening

As the unit has been subjected to vibrations during transit it is important that all screw fittings are re-tightened.



Re-tightening

After filling the system with water and once it is in operation, all union fittings must be re-tightened.

<u>Danfoss</u>

Design



Your heat interface unit may look different from the heat interface unit shown

- A Heat exchanger, HE
- B Heat exchanger, DHW
- M Electrical wiring box
- 2B Double check valve, WRAS
- 4 Safety valve
- 7 Thermostatic controller, HE
- 9 Strainer

- 10 Circulator pump
- 14 Sensor pocket, energy meter
- 20 Filling/drain valve
- 31 Differential pressure controller
- 38 Expansion tank
- 41B Fitting piece, energy meter
- 41C Fitting piece, Shut-off-valve
- 48 Air vent, manual
- 54 Energy meter
- 62B Pressure Absorber with non-return valve

B

- 63 Sieve
- 69 On/off valve
- 74 IHPT controller, DHW

Heating flow and return pipes will be fitted as top feed or bottom feed, according to specification



Schematic description - Termix VVX-I-R FI RAD



Your heat interface unit may look different from the heat interface unit shown

- A Heat exchanger, HE
- B Heat exchanger, DHW
- L Border of delivery
- M Electrical wiring box
- 1 Isolation valve
- 2B Double check valve, WRAS
- 4 Safety valve
- 7 Thermostatic valve

- 9 Strainer
- 10 Circulator pump
- 14 Sensor pocket, energy meter
- 20 Filling/drain valve
- 26 Pressure gauge
- 31 Differential pressure controller
- 38 Expansion tank
- 39 Connection closed

- 41B Fitting piece, energy meter
- 41C Fitting piece, Shut-off-valve
- 48 Air vent, manual
- 62B Pressure Absorber with non-return valve
- 63 Sieve
- 69 On/Off valve
- 74 IHPT controller



Schematic description - Termix VVX-I-R FI UFH



Your heat interface unit may look different from the heat interface unit shown

- A Heat exchanger, HE
- B Heat exchanger, DHW
- L Border of delivery
- M Electrical wiring box
- 1 Isolation valve
- 2B Double check valve, WRAS
- 4 Safety valve
- 7 Thermostatic valve
- 9 Strainer

- 10 Circulator pump
- 14 Sensor pocket, energy meter
- 20 Filling/drain valve
- 24 Delivered loose with unit
- 26 Pressure gauge
- 31 Differential pressure controller
- 38 Expansion tank
- 39 Connection closed
- 41B Fitting piece, energy meter

- 41C Fitting piece, Shut-off-valve
- 48 Air vent, manual
- 60 Thermostat (only for under floor heating)
- 62B Pressure Absorber with non-return valve
- 63 Sieve
- 69 On/Off valve
- 74 IHPT controller

Termix VVX-I-R FI - 7 Series DS fully insulated

Danfoss

Electrical connections and wiring

Before connecting the unit to an electrical supply, please note the following:

Safety notes

Please read the relevant parts of the safety notes.

230 V

The heat interface unit must be connected to 230 V AC and earth.

Potential bonding

Potential bonding should be carried out according to DS/HD 60364-4-41:2007 and IEC 60364-5-54:2011. The bonding point is located on the bottom of the mounting plate in the right corner and marked with an earth symbol.

Disconnection

The electrically connected heat interface unit must be disconnected for repairs.



Authorised personnel

All electrical installation work may only be carried out by an authorised electrician. The electrical connection must be carried out in accordance with applicable legislation and local standards.

It must be ensured that wires and cables do not come into contact with the hot pipes. It must also be ensured that wires and cables are not placed against sharp edges.



Wiring diagram - radiator heating



Wiring diagram - underfloor heating



Danfoss

Fitting of energy meter

Fitting piece

The heat interface unit is equipped with a fitting piece for the energy meter.

Mounting the energy meters:

- Close isolation valves Close the isolation valves on DH Supply and DH Return, if there is water in the system.
- Loosen nuts Loosen the nuts on the fitting piece.
- Remove fitting piece Remove the fitting piece and replace it with the energy meter. Don't forget the gaskets.
- **Tighten connections** After mounting of the energy meter, remember to check and tighten all threaded connections.

Sensor pocket

The sensors of the energy meter is mounted in the sensor pockets.





Dantoss

Filling of the primary heating system

A flushing bypass or similar should be mounted. Only introduce heating network water in the HIU once it has been flushed.

1. First fill

When carrying out the first fill, the heat exchanger must be slowly filled with water until it reaches working pressure.

2. Pressure gauge

The HE pressure gauge indicates the pressure of the HE system. This instruction must be followed strictly to avoid dangerous situations.

3. Supply hose

An isolation valve with plug is installed in the HE return line. To fill the system, the isolation valve must first be closed, the plug removed and a supply hose connected. On re-opening the isolation valve, system fill can commence.

4. Pre-pressure

The expansion vessel is supplied prepressurised to 0.5 bar. The pre-pressure required for the individual heat interface unit will depend on system head (the distance between the lowest and highest point in the system), for example:

Height (m)	Presssure (bar)
0-5	0,5
5-10	1,0
10-15	1,5
15-20	2,0

5. Filling stop

When filling the system with water, the pressure gauge should be observed closely. Filling must stop when the pressure gauge shows a pressure approximately 1-2 bar higher than the pre-pressure setting. The isolation valve is then closed, the hose removed and the plug replaced.





Re-tighten connections

After water has been added to the system and the system has been put into operation, re-tighten ALL constructions.

Danfoss

Filling of the secondary heating system

Step 1:

Remove the front and centre plate.

Step 2: Remove the cap and connect the flexible hose.

Step 3:

Open both valves.

Step 4:

After filling up the secondary heating system, close both valves, disconnect the flexible hose and refit the insulation.





Start-up

1. Pump speed

Set the pump to its highest speed before start-up.

2. Start pump

Start the pump and heat through the system.

Remark:

The circulator pump should run for 10 minutes during the first installation.

3. Open isolation valves - primary

The isolation valves should then be opened and the unit observed as it enters service. Visual checking should confirm temperatures, pressures, acceptable thermal expansion and absence of leakage. If the heat exchanger operates in accordance with design, it can be put into regular use.

4. Vent system

Switch off the pump and vent the installation after the radiators have warmed up.

5. Check the strainer

Check strainer on heating and DHW underfloor heating.

Strainers should be cleaned regularly by authorized personnel. The frequency of cleaning will depend on operating conditions. 5

Pump

The pump must be switched off during system filling.



Underfloor heating

Pump stop function

If the heat interface unit is used in connection with underfloor heating, the circulation pump must be connected to the pump stop function in the underfloor heating controller. The pump must be stopped if all underfloor heating circuits are closed.

Warranty

If this is not possible, then flow must be continued through the by-pass. Failing this, the pump will be at risk of seizure and any remaining warranty is forfeited.

ı.

<u>Jantoss</u>

Dantoss

Operating Guide - Components

Heating controls

Thermoactuators

Activating the thermoactuators

The thermoactuators are supplied with a "first open" function, which means that they are slightly open for frost protection until the electrical controller is installed. During commissioning, the "first open" function is disabled by removing the red mounting split on the thermoactuator.

Please check that the thermoactuators can fully close following disabling of the "first open" function. See the installation guide included with the thermoactuator.



RAVK controller (35-75 °C)

Temperature setting Relation between scale numbers 1-5 and closing temperature. (the values given are approximate)

1 = 30 °C 2 = 40 °C 3 = 52 °C 4 = 64 °C5 = 76 °C

Thermostatic control

The flow temperature in the space heating circuit is controlled using the temperature regulation of the heat interface unit, depending on model and type.

The temperature of the HE flow line is adjusted as follows: To increase the temperature, turn the handle on the thermostatic controller to select a higher number.

To decrease the temperature, turn the handle on the thermostatic controller to select a lower number.

Removing the RAVK sensor

1. Setting

Before removing the RAVK sensor from the valve turn to setting 5.

2. Loosen screw

Loosen the screw as much as you can still keeping it in place.

3. Remove

Remove the RAVK sensor.





Danfoss

Refitting the RAVK sensor

1. Setting

Before refitting the RAVK sensor make sure it is set to 5. Make a note of the position of the arrow.

2. Ridges

On the exact opposite side of the arrow on the front is a ridge on the inside edge of the sensor housing - and another opposite this one.

3. Grooves

Note the four grooves on the rim of the valve.

4. Alignment

Align the arrow on the front to one of the grooves on the rim of the valve and push the RAVK sensor onto the valve.





Alignment



Differential pressure controller

The differential pressure controller smooths out the fluctuations in pressure arriving from the heat network. The operating pressure in the heat interface unit is thus held steady.

AVPL can be set within the region of 5 kPa to 25 kPa (0.05 bar to 0.25 bar).



Circulator pump UPM3

UPM3 pumps can be controlled under constant pressure, proportional pressure or constant speed mode as defined by means of an intelligent user interface.

The variable speed modulating modes allow the pump to match its performance to the system requirements, helping to reduce noise when thermostatic valves are closing down. Energy labelling class A.



Danfoss

Grundfos UPM3 AUTO instructions

Control mode

Each push on the button switches to the next program setting. The choice of operation mode depends on the type of heating system and the pressure loss in the system.

Remark:

The circulator pump should run for 10 minutes during the first installation.



Settings

Function	Green / PP		Yellow	Yellow	Yellow
Proportional pressure Auto adapt	•				
Constant pressure auto adapt		•			
Proportional pressure 1	•		•		
Proportional pressure 2 (factory setting)	•		•	•	
Proportional pressure 3 - Max	•		•	•	•
Constant pressure 1		•	•		
Constant pressure 2		•	•	•	
Constant pressure 3 - Max		•	•	•	•
Constant curve 1			•		
Constant curve 2			•	•	
Constant curve 3 - Max			•	•	•

Alarm status

Function	IIII / PP	Server CP	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow
Power supply failure					
Blocked	•				•
Supply voltage low	•			•	
Electrical error	•		•		

Recommended Circulator Pump Settings

The circulator pump (10) setting will be individual to each installation, dependent on the pressure drop across the secondary circuit and the space heating design flow rate.

The below recommendations are intended as a guide.

	PP 1	PP 2	PP 3	CP 1	CP 2	CP 3	CC 1	CC 2	CC 3
Traditional TRVs	•	•	•						
Pressure Independent TRVs (PITRVs)			•			•	•	•	
Traditional UFH				•	•	•			
UFH with pressure Independent inserts						•	•	•	•

Danfoss

IMIT Thermostat

The IMIT thermostat is used to limit the underfloor heating flow temperature. The IMIT thermostat is preset to 60 °C and will shut off the pump and the primary on/off valve when the flow to the underfloor heating exceeds 60 °C.

If not already factory-fitted, the IMIT thermostat should be fitted on the secondary side flow pipe as close to the heating interface unit as possible using the steel band provided.

To adjust the IMIT thermostat, loosen the visible screw. The cover can now be removed and the scale adjusted to the desired temperature.





Safety valve

The purpose of the safety valve is to protect the heat interface unit from excessive pressure.

The blow-off pipe from the safety valve must not be closed. The blow-off pipe outlet should be placed so that it discharges freely and so that any dripping from the safety valve can be clearly seen.



Access to safety valve

Remove side frame

• Complete pipe work to drain



Waste adaptor

The waste adapter is supplied loose and is used for pipework to the drain.



Danfoss

DHW Temperature control

DHW temperature control

There are various types of DHW temperature control used in Danfoss heat interface units.

DHW temperature should typically be adjusted to 45-50 °C, as this provides optimal utilisation of DH water. At DHW temperatures above 55 °C, the possibility of limescale deposits increases significantly.

IHPT 180 controller (45-65°C)

The IHPT 180 controller is a self-acting flow-compensated temperature controller with integrated differential pressure controller. By turning the handle for temperature setting in a (+) direction the setting is increased, and by turning it in a (-) direction the setting is decreased.

Turns*	Scale	DHW Temperature Settings (° C)
0	7	64
1	6	61
2	5	58
3	4	55
4	3	52
5	2	48
6	1	44
7	0	43

* Start position: Handle turned fully in (+) direction.

The values are intended as a guide. Typically best verified at the kitchen tap





Pressure absorber

The pressure absorber reduces excess pressure created in the system caused by sudden opening/closing of taps, so a discharge outlet is omitted.

The pressure absorber can be used as a substitute to the safety valve. By reducing such excess pressure, the pressure absorber ensures proper functioning of the components located in the system. It will also considerably reduce the noise generated by vibrations that occur due to the sudden closure of taps. The pressure absorber should not be applied in systems with hot water circulation.



DHW Re-circulation

Circulation pipe

The circulation pipe set is mounted directly on the controller. The set includes circulation pipe, single check valve and fitting. When mounting the hot water circulation directly on the controller the hot water circulation temperature will be the same as the idle temperature. The idle temperature is a few degrees lower than the set domestic hot water temperature.

Hot water recirculation pump

When a hot water recirculation pump is installed together with the pre-payment unit, it is recommended that the pump takes Switched Live from Terminal 2 in the heating interface wiring box. This is to ensure that the pump stops circulating when no credit is available on the pre-payment unit.



Danfoss

Expansion tank



Heat Exchanger

Isolation valve

The heat exchanger is produced in acid-resistant, stainless steel

Double check valve, WRAS

Fill/drain valve

Air vent, manual

ce diagram





Dantoss

Maintenance

The heat interface unit requires little monitoring, apart from routine checks. It is recommended that you read the energy meter at regular intervals and write down the meter readings.

Regular inspections of the heat interface unit in accordance with these instructions are recommended and should include:

Strainers

Cleaning of strainers.

Meters

Checking of all operating parameters, including meter readings.

Temperatures

Check of all temperatures, such as DH supply temperature and DHW temperature.

Connections

Checking all connections for leaks.

Safety valves

The operation of the safety valves should be checked by turning the valve head in the indicated direction.

Venting

Check that the system is thoroughly vented.

Spare parts

Spare parts can be ordered from Sav Systems Ltd. Please ensure that any enquiry includes the heat interface unit's serial number. The serial number is found on the unit label.



Authorised personnel

All troubleshooting and maintenance may only be carried out by an authorised and qualified HVAC or electrical technician.

Danfoss

Troubleshooting

In the event of malfunction, check the following before initiating troubleshooting:

- That there is a power supply to the heat interface unit.
- That the strainer on the heat network pipe has been cleaned.
- That the heat network flow temperature is normal.
- That there is sufficient differential pressure.

Authorised personnelAll troubleshooting and maintenance may only be carried outby an authorised and qualified HVAC or electrical technician.

Ś

Measures AFTER troubleshooting

Once the troubleshooting has been completed, undertake the following measures:

- Tighten all union connections.
- Wipe off the heat interface unit and clean up any fluid spills.
- Balance the heat interface unit if necessary.
- Check that pressure and temperature are at normal levels.



Troubleshooting



Area of operation	Area of operation Problem Possible cause		Solution
		The strainer in the supply or return line is clogged up	Clean the strainer
		Too high DHW flow rate	Check the dimensioning of DHW load, actual flow temperature and differential pressure
		Defective mixer tap	Check if the mixer tap is defective and if so, replace
	Incorrect DHW	Defective or blocked check valve on the circulation valve	Check and replace if defective
	temperature	Incorrect set-point on the DHW controller	Set the DHW controller's thermostat to the correct value according to the section "Adjustments, domestic hot water"
Instantaneous water heater, thermostatic		Defective DHW controller	 Check the sensor: Remove the sensor head from the valve. If the DHW temperature then increases, replace the sensor If the DHW temperature does not increase, replace the entire valve
		Plate heat exchanger has calcified	Replace the heat exchanger
	Domestic hot water	The filter on the cold water supply is clogged up	Clean the filter
	flow is too low	Plate heat exchanger has calcified	Replace the heat exchanger
	Long wait for	Idle temperature is too low	Set the DHW controller's thermostat to the correct value according to the section "Adjustments, domestic hot water"
	domestic hot water	DHW circulation temperature	Set the thermostat higher or turn up the DHW circulation
		The strainer in the supply	Clean the strainer
		Incorrect set-point on the temperature controller	Set the thermostat of the temperature controller to the correct value according to the section "Temperature control of heating unit"
	Incorrect flow	Defective temperature controller	 Check the controller: Remove the thermostat from the valve. If the temperature then increases, replace the thermostat Alternatively, check and exercise the valve. Replace the valve if defective
		Incorrectly set differential pressure regulator	Set the differential pressure regulator to the correct value according to the section "Differential pressure regulator"
		Defective differential pressure regulator	Check and replace if defective
	space heating	Air bubbles in the system	Bleed the installation thoroughly
		Incorrect system pressure	Check the system pressure on a pressure gauge and top up with water if necessary
		The pump is not working	Check whether there is power to the pump
		Air in the pump	Make sure there is no air in the pump housing
		The pump is blocked	Exercise the pump using the centre screw
		The pump has been set at too low a level	Set the pump correctly, see the section "Circulation pump UPM3"
Indirect heating, thermostatic		Uneven heat distribution in the building due to incorrectly set balancing valves on heat emitters	Adjust or install balancing valves
		Blocked heat exchanger	Flush the system and check that a strainer has been fitted on the secondary side. Then replace the heat exchanger
		Space heating flow temperature is too high	Set the thermostat of the temperature controller to the correct value according to the section "Temperature control of heating unit"
	Primary return	Defective temperature controller	 Check the controller: Remove the thermostat from the valve. If the temperature then increases, replace the thermostat Alternatively, check and exercise the valve. Replace the valve if defective
	too high	Incorrect setting or dimensioning of the building's heat emitters	Check, set, replace
		Pump pressure is too high	Set the pump to a lower setting, see the section "Circulation pump UPM3"
		Defective non-return valve	Check and replace if defective
		Blocked heat exchanger	Flush the system and check that a strainer has been fitted on the secondary side. Then replace the heat exchanger
		Incorrectly set differential pressure regulator	Set the differential pressure regulator to the correct value according to the section "Differential pressure regulator"
	Noise in the unit	Defective differential pressure regulator	Check and replace if defective
		Pump pressure is too high	Set the pump to a lower setting, see the section "Circulation pump UPM3"

Danfoss

Deactivation and dismantling

Before beginning the task of dismantling, it must be ensured that:

- All isolation valves on connections are closed.
- The 230V plug has been removed from the socket.
- The unit has cooled down.



Gloves

It is recommended that suitable work gloves are used in connection with handling and lifting of the heat interface unit.

Disposal

This product consists of materials that cannot be disposed of together with household waste.

The product is dismantled and the components sorted into various groups before disposal.

Local legislation governing disposal must be followed.



Danfoss

Declaration of conformity



Danfoss A/S 6430 Nordborg Denmark CVR nr.: 20 16 57 15 Telephone: +45 7488 2222 Fax: +45 7449 0949

UK DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Danfoss A/S

Danfoss District Energy Division

Declares under our sole responsibility that the:

Product category: Small substations

Type designations:

		BTD	VMTD mini mix			Mixing loop
Ø18:	HD	DIAY	VMTD mix	VX	VVX	
	BVX	VMTD F mix	1		Measuring Unit	
C28:	CS 28 HD	BV	CS 28 VMTD	CS 28 VX	CS 28 VVX	BL
C32:	CS 32 HD	BV	CS 32 VMTD	CS 32 VX	CS 32 VVX	
C40:		BV	CS 40 VMTD	CS 40 VX	CS 40 VVX	

Covered by this declaration is in conformity with the following directive(s), regulation(s), standard(s) or other normative document(s), provided that the product is used in accordance with our instructions.

Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008 BS EN ISO 12100:2011

Safety of machinery – General principles for design – Risk assessment and risk reduction

BS EN 60204-1:2018

Safety of machinery – Electrical equipment of machines – Part 1: General requirements

The Restriction of the Use of Certain Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations 2012 (as amended)

BS EN IEC 63000:2018

Technical documentation for the assessment of electrical and electronic products with respect to the restriction of hazardous substances.

Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2016 BS EN 61000-6-1:2007

Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-1: Generic standards – Immunity residential, commercial and light-industrial environments

BS EN 61000-6-2:2005

Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-2: Generic standards – Immunity for industrial environments

BS EN 61000-6-3:2007 + A1:2011

Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-3: Generic standards – Emission standard for residential, commercial and light-industrial environments

Date: 2021.04.16	leves a Unitar	Date: 2021.04.16	Approved by: MANAN Diric DUNK
Place of issue: DK-7451 Sunds	Signature:	Place of issue: DK-7451 Sunds	Signature:
	Name: Claus G. Mortensen		Name: Karina Friis Skov
	Title: Quality Manager		Title: Director, Engineering

Danfoss only vouches for the correctness of the English version of this declaration. In the event of the declaration being translated into any other language, the translator concerned shall be liable for the correctness of the translation

ID No: LUK30022 Revision No: 01 This doc. is managed by 50080577

Page 1 of 1



Pre hand over check list

Description:	Pos.	Page	ок	Remark:
Connection conneted correctly		11		
All connections tightened				
Primary system flushed, through flushing bypass				
2 Strainers checked	9	20		
Differential pressure controller adjusted	31	21		
Clip on actuator removed	69	21		
Wiring completed		15-16		
Mains connected				
Room controller connected and working				
Pre payment unit connected and working				
Pump setting completed	10	23		
Correct pressure on secondary system	26	18		
System properly vented		20		
Underfloor heating stat mounted correctly on heating supply line	60	24		
Safety valve checked and piped to drain	4	24		
DHW Temperature setting	74	25		
Heating temperature setting	7	21		
Flushing bypass closed				
Insulation has been remounted				

SAV Systems Ltd. · Scandia House · Boundary Road · Woking, Surrey GB-GU21 5BX · Great Britain Tel.: +44 (0) 1483 771910 · info@sav-systems.com · www.sav-systems.com

ato H

Danfoss can accept no responsibility for possible errors in catalogues, brochures and other printed material. Danfoss reserves the right to alter its products without notice. This also applies to products already on order provided that such alterations can be made without subsequential changes being necessary in specifications already agreed. All trademarks in this material are property of the respective companies. Danfoss and all Danfoss logotypes are trademarks of Danfoss A/S. All rights reserved.

Ground Floor Fire Strategy







Notes								
1. DA Str	A Fire Strategy Drawings to be read in conjunction with Fire ategy prepared by ELEMENTA.							
2. Re	sidential Accommodation will be provided with automatic							
3. All	sidential amenity spaces (including reception) will be ted with sprinklers							
4. Th	provided with sprinklers. The retail units, car park and basement will be provided with							
au	tomatic sprinkler systems.							
	Fire Fighting Stair							
FFL	Fire Fighting Lift							
EL	Evacuation Lift							
	Secondary Escape Stair							
	Permanent natural ventilation to lobby							
MSVS	Mechanical smoke vent shaft							
	Wet Riser							
	Wet Riser Inlet							
	Dry Riser							
	Dry Riser Inlet							
Н	Fire Hydrant							
PIB	Premises Information Box Fire Alarm Panel HMI Panel							
(FD20S)	FD20S Fire Door							
FD30	FD30 Fire Door							
(FD30S)	FD30S Fire Door							
FD60	FD60 Fire Door							
FD60S	FD60S Fire Door							
FD120S	FD120S Fire Door							
FD30S	FD30S Fire Door with self-closing device							
PS	Pressure sensor to door							
	Means of escape							
<i></i>	Escape route							
	Fire fighting access route							
<i></i>	Air Intake through Facade							
	120 min. Fire curtain							
	30 min. fire rated wall							
FR 60	60 min. fire rated wall							
FR 120	120 min. fire rated wall							
FR 240	240 min. fire rated wall							
Δ	Fire Brigade Access Point							
Ē	External Emergency Lighting							
	Disabled Refuge with Emergency Call Point							

i.	R
i	

REV	NOTES	DATE	BY	AUTH
S3-01	Stage 3 - First Issue	16.11.20	PR	TP
S4-P1	Preliminary issue for coordination	08.04.21	CS	BS
S4-P2	Preliminary issue for coordination	21.04.21	VP	TP
S4-P3	Preliminary issue for coordination	30.04.21	VP	TP
S4-P4	Stage 4 Issue	14.05.21	VP	TP
S4-P5	Stage 4 Issue	17.05.21	VP	TP
S4-P6	Stage 4 Issue	20.05.21	VP	TP
S4-P7	Stage 4 Issue	17.06.21	VP	TP
S4-01	Stage 4 Issue	23.07.21	VP	TP
S4-02	Stage 4 Issue	15.09.21	SL	VP
S4-03	Fire rating around dry / wet risers	22.10.21	VP	TP
S4-04	Smoke seals and Self-closing devices updated	17.12.21	VP	TP
S4-05	Smoke seal omitted from riser doors as clouded	20.12.21	VP	TP
S4-06	Changes to reception, BoH and bikes store area	22.04.22	VP	TP
S4-07	FR120 walls between risers added in Block B	26.09.22	VP	TP
S4-08	PIB Location added	17.11.22	VP	TP
S4-09	PIB note omitted from Block B reception, door blocks switched on	14.12.22	VP	TP
C01	Stage 5 First issue.	12.01.23	VP	TP

DARLING ASSOCIATES ARCHITECTS

1 Greencoat Row mail@darlingassociates.net London SW1P 1DH www.darlingassociates.net UK +44 20 7630 0500

RAWING STATUS
itage 5

Fire Strategy **Ground Floor**

PROJECT The Perfume Factory, North Acton SCALE AT A0: SCALE AT A3:

N.T.S.

DRAWING

20026 68100

1:100

JOB NO.

© Darling Associates Ltd.